



Oriental Translation Socy.
LONDON.
INSTITUTED 1828.

UNDER THE PATRONAGE OF HIS MOST GRACIOUS MAJESTY
WILLIAM THE FOURTH.



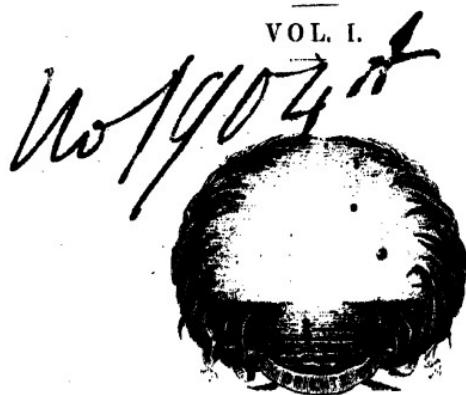
THIS COPY
WAS PRINTED FOR
THE ASIATIC SOCIETY
OF
BENGAL.

THE
CHRONICLES
OF
RABBI JOSEPH BEN JOSHUA BEN MEIR,
THE SPHARDI.

TRANSLATED FROM THE HEBREW
BY
C. H. F. BIALLOBLOTZKY.



VOL. I.



1904

4223

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE ORIENTAL TRANSLATION FUND
OF GREAT BRITAIN AND IRELAND;
BY
RICHARD BENTLEY, NEW BURLINGTON STREET.
M.DCCC.XXXV.

933
J. 83. C.B.

39255

SL.NO. 024710

LONDON :
PRINTED BY JOHN WEINSTEINER,
62, LEMAN STREET

P R E F A C E.

IT is a principle now generally recognized, that in order to arrive at an accurate knowledge of past events, and to form a just estimate of the state of civilization existing in former times, the testimony of different witnesses should be compared: and, in accordance with this principle, we find that some eminent historians have recently endeavoured to avail themselves of the contrasted evidence of eastern and western sources of information, in order to elucidate some interesting periods in the history of Europe during the middle ages, which are treated of simultaneously, though with widely discrepant and almost opposite partialities and prejudices, in the Chronicles of Christian ecclesiastics, and of the Mohammedan writers of Western Asia. On similar grounds,

PREFACE.

attention is highly due to the historical treatises, compiled at different times by learned Jews in their own ancient and classical language*. An

* Some of the historical and geographical works of the rabbies have already been published in Latin translations; for instance:—

יוסיפון בן נוריה, sive Josephus Hebraicus; videlicet, rerum memorabilium in populo Judaico, tam pacis quam belli tempore gestarum, Libri vi. Hebraici Latine versi a Jo. Friderico Breithaupt. *Gothæ et Lipsiæ*. 1710. 4to. This work has also been translated into English and into Jewish German.

Compendium Elegans Historiarum Josephi. Hebræis et Latinis legenda exarantur, per Sebastianum Munsterum. 1539. 12mo.

Cippi Hebraici sive Hebræorum, tam veterum, Prophetarum Patriarcharum; quam recentiorum, Tannæorum, Amoræorum, Rabbinorum monumenta, Hebraicæ a Judæo quodam teste oculato, tum intra tum etiam extra Terram Sanctam observata et conscripta; . nunc vero Latinitate donata, notisque illustrata, auctiore Joh. Henrico Hottingero. *Heidelbergæ*. 1662. 12mo.

מסעוו של רבי בנימין, Itinerarium D. Benjaminis, cum versione et notis Constantini l'Empereur. *Lugd. Bat.* 1634. 8vo. This has been translated into English also.

אנדרת אורהות עולם, id est, Itinera Mundi, sic dicta nempe Cosmographia, auctore Abrâhamo Peritsol: Latina versione donavit et notas passim adjectit Thomas Hyde. *Oxonii*. 1641. 4to.

Chronicon Hebraeorum, Majus et Minus. Latine vertit, et commentario perpetuo illustravit Johannes Meyer. *Amstelædami*. 1649. 4to.

The **צמה דוד** has been translated into Latin by Vorstius, but not accurately, and into Jewish German.

The contents of many similar historical works are yet little known among Christians; viz. The **הקבלה**, or "Chain of Tradition," by Rabbi Gedalia; the **קבלה הראב"ד**, the "Tradition"

PREFACE.

extensive mercantile correspondence, and frequent wanderings and pilgrimages, afforded to the Jews many opportunities of acquiring information during centuries in which the greater part of the nations professing Christianity remained in comparative ignorance. Jews were, during the middle ages, admitted into the secrets of European and Asiatic cabinets, and consulted on questions of political importance. The interests of their nation were then, much more than at present, interwoven with those of almost every people, both barbarous and civilized ; and while self-interest quickened the perceptive faculties of the children of Israel to the observation of passing events, their national bias was always so essentially different from that of the nations among whom they sojourned, that the misconceptions and misstatements of their historical writers could hardly ever coincide with

according to Rabbi Abraham Ben Dior Pisqueranus ; the יוחסין, or " Genealogies," by Rabbi Abraham Ben Samuel Zacutha.

* The most interesting information probably might be found in monographies, like the שאלות שלום ירושלים, *Ask for the Peace of Jerusalem*, containing an account of the events which happened during the author's residence in the Holy Land ; or in the צויטונג ארים אינדיין, containing a history of the Jews in Æthiopia, by a Jew who resided there, written in Jewish German.

those of any cotemporary party, either political or religious.

Considerations such as these, induced the then Secretary of the Oriental Translation Committee, nearly three years ago, to request me to select some historical Hebrew work, a translation of which might be published under the auspices of the Fund. Having, in autumn, 1832, received the sanction of the Committee to my proposal of translating the *Chronicles* of Rabbi Joseph Ben Joshua, and their approval of a specimen of my version which I had submitted for their examination, I employed a well-informed Israelite to prepare in as short a time as he could, a rough sketch of a literal translation of almost the entire work, leaving out intricate passages and all the proper names which presented difficulties not easily to be overcome. Taking this hastily executed, yet, as far as the sense was concerned, generally correct version for my basis, I have, since the autumn of 1832, devoted a considerable portion of my time to its rectification and remodelling, as well as to the filling up of chasms, assisted by the frequent advice of kind friends, and lately, during its progress through the press, by the valuable aid

of a printing-office, remarkably well qualified for works of this nature.

It is in conformity with the express desire of the Committee, that in the translation, as it now appears, the peculiar phraseology of the Hebrew original has to a great extent been retained: a considerable portion of the translation which I had sent to the press, and in which I had endeavoured to soften the antique harshness of the narrative, was returned to me, accompanied by a letter from the Secretary, an extract of which I subjoin in a note*.

Although I have availed myself of every help which friends have afforded, or which I could

* "To enable you to form a correct idea of the wishes of the Committee, I am directed to transmit to you the accompanying work, entitled, 'The Book of Jasher,' which, though a palpable forgery, is a remarkably fine imitation of the language of the Bible.

" As the Chronicles of Rabbi Joseph are written in Hebrew, by a Jew who has attempted faithfully to copy the style of the hagiographers of the Old Testament, the Committee felt that no other style could possibly suit a work so composed; and it was on this ground that it expressed its approbation so decidedly on what it saw of your first specimen. The Committee in no way deviates from the view it took on that occasion, and requests that you will have the goodness to make such alteration in your translation, as shall render it conformable to the style of the Old Testament."

procure at a moderate expense from Jews, I have sometimes met with difficulties which I have not been able to overcome. Rabbi Joseph wrote for the information of the learned Jews of his own age, and consequently sometimes presupposes a knowledge of persons and facts, the remembrance of which is now lost. In addition to this, the small print and defective types of the Amsterdam edition of the work, from which I was obliged to translate (having failed in my attempts to procure a copy of the better printed *editio princeps*, Venice 1554), rendered it in many instances almost impossible to distinguish between ב and כ; ג and ג; ה and ה; נ, נ, and נ; ס and ס; ו and ו; hence I have often been unable to recognize and identify the names of men, cities, and rivers.

I have only very recently been so fortunate as to meet with a copy of the Venice edition in the library of the British Museum, where I had searched for it, but in vain, two years ago when I began my work*. I trust that a careful comparison of this edition with the Amsterdam copy

* In the Bodleian library at Oxford, also, there are two copies of the Venice edition: one in the Selden, the other in the Oppenheimer collection. Both copies are defective; but they

in my own possession, will enable me to proceed with greater safety in preparing for the press the second part of my translation, appended to which it is my intention to give a list of such of the proper names occurring in the first volume, as the suggestions of others, or my own further inquiries into the subject, may in the mean time enable me to determine with greater precision.

As even the Amsterdam edition of Rabbi Joseph's work is but rarely to be met with, I here insert its title at full length, accompanied by a translation on the opposite page*.

complete each other. I have only lately had an opportunity of cursorily inspecting them, before I was aware of the existence of a copy in the British Museum. I cannot here forbear the expression of a wish, that the Delegates of the Clarendon press would cause this original edition of Rabbi Joseph's Chronicles to be reprinted.

* The word סְפָרְדִּי, Sphardi, in the title-page, does not there signify a Spaniard, or native of the Pyrenean Peninsula, but a Jew belonging to the sect of the Sphardim. The "Kingdom of Edom" is Europe, and especially Rome, its metropolis. See Abraham Peritsol Itinera Mundi, c. vii., and Hyde's remarks on that passage.—כְּבָדֶךָ רַבֵּי כְּהִירָה stands for לְפָקָד קָטוֹן "according to the lesser number," i. e. the number of years from the Creation with the omission of the thousands. The numerical value of the letters בָּעֵת חֲזִיאָה is 493.

ספר

דברי הימים

למלך צרפת ומלך בית אוטומאן
התונגר

שהחיבר החכם רבי יוסף בן יהושע בן מאיר הכהן
הספרדי ובו ספרו כל מלחמות ומאורעות
המעשיות שאירעו במלכות אדום
ושםצעאל מעת היהה לנו :

ונמלנו בו גוריות ונגלות בני עמינו טהו נמלכות נרתעת
splendour ואפקנו פאר מדינות ס' יין עליינו :

וכאשר שרינו כתועלת הגדול בignum הספר הזכרונות הלאו שמודיע
חוותנו מה טהה מיין קדם ומכפר נפלחות ס' טה מספיל זה
עירס ומודיע לנו כמה מעלות טובות למקום עליינו פגכל
סדורות עומדים עליינו לבתוינו והק'נה מעילנו
מייס : ולענ' נדפס כי לך פעם אהמת נשנת
ט' ז' ווינו בignum חפלו א' גערן ופנים
במושפה ומיעט לה נועט ממנה :
ע' כ' קדנסנו מילך
ומלחה פולך דעה :

באמסטרדם

בבית ובבדoops כחריר שלמה בן כחריר יוסף
כץ זצ'ל פרופס מוכרך ספרי

בשנת בעת ההיא אביה אתם לפ"ז :

THE BOOK
OR
THE WORDS OF THE DAYS

THE KINGS OF FRANCE AND THE KINGS
OF THE HOUSE OF OTHMAN
THE TURK,

Which the wise Rabbi Joseph the Son of Joshua the Son of Meir,
the Priest, the Sphardi, compiled. In it are told all the Wars
and Events which came to pass, and happened to us
in the Kingdom of Edom and of Ishmael, from
the Time when it became a Nation.

And in this Book are found the Persecutions and Captivities
of the Sons of our Nation, which came to pass in
the Kingdoms of France, Spain, Germany,
and other Countries. The Lord
will protect us !

Whereas we have seen the great Utility found in this Book of Records, which
teacheth us what has been from the Days of Old, and relateth the
Wonders of the ETERNAL who putteth down one and setteth up
another, and maketh known unto us how many Degrees of Goodness
the LORD hath conferred upon us ; for in every Generation there
are some who rise up against us to destroy us ; but the HOLY
AND BLESSED ONE delivereth us out of their Hands ; and
it hath not been printed but once, in the Year Three Hun-
dred and Fourteen ; and it is not to be found, even one
in a City, and two in a Tribe ; and hence it was
almost unknown among us ; therefore we have
caused it to be printed afresh, that the Earth may
be full of Knowledge.

IN AMSTERDAM.

ON THE HOUSE AND PRINTING-OFFICE OF THE RESPECTED
•SOLOMON, SON OF THE RESPECTED JOSEPH PROOPS,
THE RIGHTEOUS PRIEST (MAY THE MEMORY OF THE
RIGHTEOUS BE A BLESSING !) SELLER OF BOOKS.

*In the Year "ABOUT THAT TIME I WILL BRING YOU,"
of the small Number.*

Since all authentic notices concerning Rabbi Joseph are contained in his *Chronicles*, it would be superfluous in this place to say more, than that he was born at Avignon, A. D. 1496, of Jewish parents, who had been exiled from Spain, and afterwards settled near Genoa. Rabbi Joseph was an eye-witness of the rebellion of Fiesco, and a contemporary of Henry VIII, Charles V, Andrea Doria, Leo X, and Luther. He appears to have been a man of veracity, who would not intentionally misrepresent facts, although he viewed every thing through a Jewish medium. Rabbi Joseph's statements concerning his own nation will be found correct, and generally also his relation of the affairs of France, Spain, and Italy. But of England and other northern countries his knowledge was confused and imperfect; and, sometimes, in reference to these, he seems to have relied upon vague reports.

For the literary notices concerning Rabbi Joseph's *Chronicles*, I refer my readers to the first, third, and fourth volumes of Wolfi *Bibliotheca Hebraica*. It is there stated, that Ferran-

dus had some intention of translating Rabbi Joseph's Chronicles into French.

Wilken, in his "History of the Crusades," makes frequent use of a manuscript German version, of not quite the former half of Rabbi Joseph's Chronicles. This translation which terminates with A. D. 1509, was made by Johann Jacob Rabe, of Anspach, the German translator of the Mishnah. It belonged to the library of the late Baron Gemmingen, minister of state in the grand-duchy of Baden. Baron Gemmingen communicated the manuscript to Wilken, who quotes it frequently, and availed himself of it in preparing a German translation of some pages of Rabbi Joseph's Chronicles, which is inserted in the appendix to the first division of the third part of his History of the Crusades. This extract has lately been re-translated into English, and published by Keightley, in his History of the Crusades. The illustrative notes to Wilken's specimen, will enable the attentive reader to form an idea of the obstacles which I have had to encounter, in undertaking the translation of a work, the difficulties of which sometimes baffled the rabbinical learning

even of the experienced translator of the Mishnah. I would, nevertheless, have gladly availed myself of Rabe's labors, had I been able to ascertain what became of the manuscript after the death of Baron Gemmingen.

Rabbi Joseph's style is biblico-oriental, and in his work many passages will be found which may well be adduced in illustration of Gibbon's remark, that a plain narrative of facts is sometimes more pathetic than the most labored description of epic poetry. But a predilection for biblical phraseology appears to have had an undue influence in the composition of Rabbi Joseph's work: and as modern Latinists are sometimes tempted to use expressions, only because they are truly Roman; so Rabbi Joseph occasionally employs phrases, only because they occur in classical Hebrew. In spite of these peculiarities, he deserves the character given to him by Wolfius, who justly calls him, *Chronographus magni nominis inter Judæos.*

Rabbi Joseph gives full vent to his feelings of indignation against the persecutors of his brethren, whom he "hateth with a perfect hatred;" but he

appears to be free from those “imaginings fearfully absurd, and moonstruck reveries,” by which some rabbinical writers have disfigured their productions. Rabbi Joseph makes only a few cabalistical allusions to the numerical power of certain words harmonizing with their meaning; but he tells nothing concerning the magnificence of great Jewish empires founded by the Ten Tribes, beyond the river Sambatyon, whose stream of stones and sand is so rapid, that neither vessels nor bridges can cross it; and so pious, that its dry waves always stop on the Sabbath-day, when none but Sabbath-breakers, who do not exist in those happy realms, would attempt to cross the Sambatyon. Such excrescences, frequent in other rabbinical writers, do not occur in Rabbi Joseph’s Chronicles, which, in that class to which they belong, are highly distinguished by their sobriety.

Since Rabbi Joseph records the details of events relative to Jewish history, according to the Jewish era, it may not be superfluous here to mention that according to the computation of Scaliger, three thousand seven hundred and sixty-one

years must be subtracted from any Jewish date, subsequent to the birth of Christ, in order to find the corresponding year of the Christian era, and as many are to be added to the number of years of our era, if we intend to express the same date according to the Jewish chronology. For example, the present year, A. D. 1834, is, in the Jewish calendar, the year 5595. But this year commenced only on the 11th of October, consequently, the greater part of our year 1834, has coincided with the Jewish year 5594*.

The method adopted in this translation in either imitating or translating the names of persons, nations, countries and towns, requires some explanation. When a really rabbinical name has been used in the original, I have endeavoured to express in English characters the sound of the Hebrew word. Thus, I have written *Sphard*, for the Pyrenean peninsula; *Tzaphath*, for both Gaul and its modern synonym, France; *Ashkenaz*, for Germany, in the widest sense; *Land of Yavan*,

* See Ideler, Handbuch der Chronologie, t. I. p. 537.

for the countries inhabited by the Greeks ; *Yavanim*, for the Greeks themselves. But when I have met with appellations which are mere imitations or corruptions of Latin, Italian, French, German, or English names, I have thought it best to adopt a form familiar to the English reader ; as, December, אִינְגָלַטְרִיהּ ; Italy, אִיטָלִיהּ ; England, דִּיצְמֶר ; Burgundy, בּוֹרְגֻּנוֹנִיָּה ; Milan, מִילָּן ; Henry, אַינְרִיקוּ ; &c. A few proper names which could not easily be identified with the current appellations of the persons or localities intended, I have retained, expressing them, as nearly as possible, in English characters*.

* Those readers who might occasionally find fault with my manner of spelling the proper names of this class, I would request to bear in mind the following remarks of Gibbon.

“ In proper names of foreign, and especially of oriental origin, it should be always our aim to express in our English version, a faithful copy of the original. But this rule, which is founded on a just regard to uniformity and truth, must often be relaxed ; and the exception will be limited or enlarged by the custom of the language and the taste of the interpreter. Our alphabet may be often defective : a harsh sound, an uncouth spelling, might offend the ear or the eye of our countrymen ; and some words, notoriously corrupt, are fixed, and, as it were, naturalized in the vulgar tongue. I can feel, where I cannot explain, the motives of my choice.”—*Decline and Fall, &c.* Preface to the fourth volume of the quarto edition.

With a view to facilitate references to the Hebrew original, I have retained the division into paragraphs of the Amsterdam copy, and have marked the pages of the same edition by Hebrew numerical letters, inserted between brackets in my translation.

F. B.

London, 26th November, 1834.

THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE*.

THUS saith Joseph, the son of Joshua, the son of Meir, the son of Jehudah, the son of Joshua, the son of Jehudah, the son of David, the son of Moses, of the priests who went forth from Goiti† from the land of Sphard.♦

Knowing that within the whole gate of my people‡ there hath not arisen another historian in Israel like unto Josephon, the priest, who wrote the wars of the land of Jehudah and Jerusalem. They ceased, the writers of memorials, they ceased; in Israel they ceased, until I arose, even I, Joseph§; I who arose to be a writer of memorials in Israel, and until I took it into my heart to write in a book, a memorial of the multitude of afflictions which we have experienced|| in the countries of the

* This preface is not to be found in the Amsterdam edition of Rabbi Joseph's Chronicles: I have translated it from the edition printed at Venice.

+ מנויאיטי.

‡ Ruth iii. 11.

§ Judges v. 7.

יודע כל שער עמי.
תלאות ||

Gentiles, from the day that Jehudah was led captive from his country until this day ; and of the wars of the kings of the Gentiles which they have warred in the land of Jehudah and Jerusalem, and the exiles from Tzaphrath and Sphard, that the sons of Israel may know it. And I have gathered in Israel after the reapers, as my hand hath found it, here a little and there a little. Therefore I also shook my lap* to write a book of the Chronicles of the kings of Tzaphrath and of Sphard, and of the kings of the house of Othman ; and to put their times in a book†, *and to write* how these Egyptians have wronged us, as well as our fathers, *that the remembrance thereof* may not pass away from among the Jews ; and the memory of our wrongs shall not come to an end, *nor depart* from their seed until the lame man shall leap as a hart, and the tongue of the dumb shall sing†. Sing praises unto the Lord, for he hath done glorious things ! This is known in every land.

* וּלְשִׁים זָמְנֵיהֶם עַל סְפַר † נְעָרָתִי חֲצֹנִי Neh. v. 13.

† Is. xxxv. 6.

HEBREW CHRONICLES.

[x]

1. **ADAM** begat Seth, and Seth begat Enosh, and Enosh begat Kenan, and Kenan begat Mahalaleel, and Mahalaleel begat Jered, and Jered begat Henoch, and **H**enoch begat Methuselah, and Methuselah begat Lamech, and Lamech begat Noah, and Noah begat Shem, Ham, and Japheth. And the sons of Japheth were Gomer and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras. The sons of Gomer were Ashkenaz, and Riphath, and Togarmah. The sons of Javan were Elisha and Tarshish, Kittim and Dodanim. And these are the families of the children of Japheth, in the countries through which they were scattered, after their tongues, in their lands, according to their nations. The sons of Gomer are the Franks, who dwell on the river Gironde, and on the river Seine. The sons of Riphath are the Bretons, who dwell in the land of Britany, upon the river Loire

which goes onward to the ocean, that is the great sea.

2. And the princes of Tzaphrath* became numerous, as it is still in their territories and in Germany unto this day†. And it came to pass, in the days when the judges of Rome executed judgment amongst them, that their hearts were divided, so that they rebelled ; but the emperor of Rome prevailed against them, and trod them under his feet. And their spirit did not rise in them any more before the emperor ; for the Lord delivered them into his hand, and he ruled over their treasures of gold‡.

3. In those days the Franks were driven away from Sicambria§, because they would not pay tribute to the emperor. And they set over themselves to be their chiefs, the men whose names are mentioned, and their names are these : Marcomiro, Shaimoni ||, and Ganebaudo¶, who went before them, and encamped in places bordering on the Roman Empire;

* Tzaphrath means here *Gaul*, and afterwards *France*.

† Rabbi Joseph would say, that, in ancient times, as well as in his own day, there were numerous petty sovereigns in France and Germany.

‡ ימשול במכמי הוהב ‡, et dominatus est in latibulis auri. Apparently meaning that the Emperor exacted tribute of them.

§ שיקאנבריהה ¶ Sicanbriah ; Buda, and the country around.

|| מארקומיירו, שואימוני ||, may be read also Markomiro, Swimoni.

¶ ניניבאדו ¶ may be read *Genebaudo*, of which the latinized form may be Genebaldus.

and there they built a strong tower, which they named Frankfort. And Lucius*, the Roman governor, gave unto them Tournay† also, which is the first city that they inherited in the land of Tzaphrath‡ at that time. And the land of their sojournings was not able to support them: and many went out to dwell on the banks of the river Sequana§. And so it seemed good in their sight, for it was a pleasant place. And Marcomiro was a man strong and valiant; and him they made ruler over them, and they honoured him much, and they made him king over them; for they said, “He is worthy to be our king, being of the seed of Priam, king of Troy, unto him belongeth the right of the kingdom.” And Marcomiro slept with his fathers, and they chose his son Pharamond, and ordained him to be king over them. And Pharamond reigned eleven years, and slept with his fathers; and his son Clodio|| reigned in his stead. And he subdued the Thuringians, and the inhabitants of Tournay and Cambray, making them his servants unto tribute¶. And he had no sons; and he reigned twenty years, and he died.

* לוסיאו, Lusio.

תורנאי, Tournay.

‡ The Hebrew name *Tzaphrath* has been retained, in order to avoid anachronisms, which would arise if צרפת should be translated either *Gaul* or *France*. || קלודיאו, Shik'ana §.

¶ ייבוש את הטורינני ואת הטורנאשיני ואת הקאמבראסיני ישימום למס עבד:

4. And there reigned in his stead Merovæus*, who was of his family; and he fought for the Romans against the Hungarians, and against the Goths many days. And Merovæus slept with his fathers, and his son Childeric † reigned in his stead. And his heart was much lifted up, and whithersoever he turned he did wickedly; and the natives drove him away, and would not hearken unto him. And it came to pass, after some days, that he returned to the cities of his kingdom; and he fought against the Roman Giloni‡, ruler of the Suessones; and the Romans fled from before them. And Childeric subdued also the men of Orleans and of Angers||, and made them his servants unto tribute§. And he slept with his fathers, and his son Clovis¶ reigned in his stead; this is that Clovis, who subdued the men of Rheims and the Swiss, and made them his tributaries. Against the Germans also Clovis fought, and they fell under his feet. And his

מִירֹבְיָאו * קַלְדְּרִיקו †.

‡ Quo et ipso ob injustas exactiones fastidito et ejecto, Childericus revocatur, et filio Ægidio profligato, Aurclianensem et Andegavensem sibi subjugat. “Childericus, by reason of his lewdness, was banished by his nobles, Ægidius, a Roman, being put in his stead, who outed for his pilling, Childericus was recalled, and Ægidius’s son being put to flight, he brought into subjection Aurange and Anjou.” *Helvicus:*

|| **הָאַנְדֵּגָאַבִּי** the Andegavi. *Andegavum* is the Latin name for Angers.

§ Gen. xlix. 15.

¶ **קָלוֹדוֹבְיָאו** Clodovio.

spirit was changed within him, so that he forsook his gods; and Riminis, bishop of Rheims, baptized him. And he gathered together men of valour, and fought against the Burgundians, the Aquitanians, and the Goths; and he overcame them, and they fell under his feet. And Clovis slept with his fathers, and his kingdom was divided between his four sons, who fought among themselves. And some of them died in battle, and some of them time wore out*, until there was but one left, whose name was Clotaire, and he reigned instead of his father. And Clotaire died, and his son Charibert reigned in his stead. And Charibert slept with his fathers in Tolosa; and Dagobert, the son of his mother, reigned in his stead. He built the high place of the famous Dionysius†, and there was the first king buried who reigned in France. And Heraclius reigned in Constantinople as emperor, in the year six hundred and thirteen‡, which is the year four thousand three hundred and seventy-three§.

5. And in the second year of his reign, arose Mohammed in the land of Arabia, and he wrote statutes and judgments; saying, “Every one that obeyeth not my laws, he shall die; for the Lord hath sent me to be a prophet of the Gentiles.” And the man waxed very great, and the nations hearkened unto

* *ומהם כל הזמן*, et de iis perfectit tempus.

† St. Denis.

‡ Christian era.

§ Jewish era.

him. And Mohammed slept with his fathers, and Abubecr reigned in his stead. Now the rest of their acts, are they not written in the book of the chronicles of the kings of the land of Ishmael ?

6. And it came to pass, in the fifth year of Heracilius, that Chosroës*, the king of Persia, went up to fight against Jerusalem, which had remained in the hands of the uncircumcised from the time of Constantine, the emperor, unto this day. And he besieged it many days, and he took it; and there fell in the midst of it at that time, about twenty thousand men slain to the ground†. And the high-priest‡ they led away captive, and the wood of their images they took away. And their altars, and their high places, they utterly brake in pieces; and the city went into captivity, and the people were cut off from it. Then the Lord established his word that he spake by his servant Moses, saying, “And your enemies that dwell therein shall be desolate.” And the emperor sent messengers unto him, saying, “Go out from the city, and her inhabitants shall be tributary unto thee, and they shall serve thee;” but Chosroës would not hearken unto them. And it came to pass, when the year was ended, that Chosroës took the whole land of

* Khosrau Perviz, or Cosroes III. קסראו השלישי

† A similar phrase occurs in Judges xx. 25.

Egypt, and the land of Aram*, and Arabia, and he reached unto Carthage, insomuch that the emperor trembled greatly.

7. And Heraclius put the imperial crown upon the head of Constantine, his son, in the tenth year of his reign. And he made ready his chariot, and removed with his whole camp on the second day of their Passover. And he went over into the country of Syria, which is Aram, and reached unto Gaza ; and when Chosroës saw it, he fled from before him. And in all places through which he passed, he burned both the shocks and the standing corn, with the olive-yards † ; and all the cities he burned with fire. And he divided the people which followed after him, setting over them Sharvaras and Sharvagas ‡ ; and they went on their journey. When the emperor heard thereof, he sent against them soldiers ; and he, and the people which were with him, went over the river Euphrates, and passing over the mountain, came unto the river Sharon, and took the bridge, and encamped there. And Sharvaras came up against him, and the river was between them, and there he pitched his tent. And it came to pass, on a certain day,

* Syria and Mesopotamia are called *Aram*, which means the high land, the upper country.

† Judges, xv. 5.

‡ שָׁרְבָּנָס וְאֶת שָׁרְבָּגָס

that they set the battle in array there, and Shar-varas acted cunningly, and fled with subtlety from before them. And they forsook the order of battle as they pursued after them: and the Persian said, “Now is the time to laugh;” and he himself turned back again, and cast them down with the edge of the sword. And the rest of the Persians fought against the emperor, who was upon the bridge, and they shot arrows upon him, and they struck him and [ב] the men which were with him. And there came a man like Anak against the emperor to fight with him; and the emperor pierced him through with the spear, and he fell from the bridge, and died; and when the Persians saw that their hero was dead, they fled for their lives. Then Chosroës again sent men of valour and horsemen against them, and Shai*, the chief captain of his army, was at their head. And the men of the emperor smote them with the edge of the sword. From heaven also they were attacked; for hail-stones fell upon them, and much people died from among them. And the king of Persia sent again many nobles and honourable men against them, but they could not stand before them; and they fell by the sword before the uncircumcised; and also the chief captain of the army of the Persians fell on that day.

8. And it happened, again, after some days, that the heart of Chosroës was lifted up ; and he said, “ I am a God : ” and he made his heart like unto the heart of gods. And he commanded, and they called him king of kings, and lord of lords, in all the cities of his kingdom ; and he made for himself a tower of silver, covered with precious stones. And he set in the midst of it a golden throne ; and he sat thereon. And he made therein the sun and the moon, and let water run out from it through narrow pipes ; and said, “ I will even cause it to rain.”

9. And the king of Persia made war a second time, and took the land of Syria, and the land of Philistia ; and he broke down the high places of the uncircumcised, and he burned them with fire, and he ground them to dust. And it grieved Heraclius ; and he went out against him with a mighty host and with a strong hand. And it happened one day when the son of Chosroës and his host were upon the banks of the river Danube*, and the host of the emperor encamped against him, that it seemed good in the sight of these two kings to fight alone half across the river upon a bridge in the sight of all the people. And he of the two that should prevail, should reign over the two hosts ; for judgment belongeth unto God. And these two fought upon the bridge ; and the Persian fell before

* דָנֻבִי.

the emperor at that time. And all the camp hearkened unto him; and they said, “It is meet for thee to be king; to thee belongeth the right of the government.” And he went unto all the places which Chosroës had taken, even unto the place where his throne was. . And he found him sitting upon the throne; and he smote off his head, so that he died like an empty wretch*. And he took all the silver and gold, and the precious stones, and returned to his own country.

10. And it came to pass, in the twenty-first year of his reign, that Heraclius, being very wise in the knowledge of the planets, saw, in his wisdom, the kingdom of Rome fall in his days under the soles of the feet of the circumcised. And this Belial† said in his heart, “The Lord will do this glorious thing in behalf of the Jews only, for they are circumcised.” And his wrath was kindled against them; and he commanded in all the cities of his kingdom to kill all the Jews who refused to exchange their glory ‡ for that which doth not profit. And he sent messengers to Dagobert, king of France, that he also might act

* כאחד רקים.

† בליעל, *literally* good for nothing, worthless fellow, *vaurien*.

‡ Religion, faith. It must be borne in mind by the Christian reader, that the author of this work was a follower of the Mosaic law; and on that account, indulgence will be allowed to some expressions which might otherwise seem objectionable.

according to this wicked saying. And Dagobert hearkened unto him; and many Jews changed their glory, and many were slain with the edge of the sword in France in those days. May the Eternal avenge the blood, and repay vengeance to his enemies! Amen and Amen. And Heraclius, the Belial, knew not that this word related to the Hagarenes*; for, like unto us, they are circumcised.

11. In those days came Omar, the son of Khittáb†, being the third successor of Mohammed, and with him a mighty host, who took the land of Aram and of Philistia; and their‡ fame went through all the earth. And they encamped against Gaza, and took it; nor was there a city too high for them. Even Damascus they took with a strong hand at that time. And Heraclius heard it; and it grieved him sorely to the heart, for he could not prevail against them; and he returned to his country. Then it was that the Arabians seized upon the whole land of Israel, and the land of Egypt. And they chose to take up their abode in those desolate cities, and made themselves families like flocks. And also Jerusalem, the desolate city, they took a second

* The Arabians descending from Hagar.

† Omar ben Khittáb was really the second successor of Mohammed, but inclusively he might be called the third.

‡ Of Mohammed and his followers.

time, and made a covenant with the uncircumcised who were in the midst thereof, in regard to the sepulchre of their Messiah; and they paid unto them the tribute which they had laid upon them for a statute.

12. And Omar, the son of Khittáb, asked and said, “Where is the house that Titus pulled down, wherein the name of the Almighty was invoked?” And they shewed him the ruined sanctuary of the Eternal. And he brought out his silver and gold in abundance, and commanded that the house should be rebuilt and restored to its strength as formerly. And he bowed himself to the ground, and prayed to the Lord. And they hastened to build the house, as Omar had commanded. And he gave to the sanctuary, churches and a field for a possession, and brought forth money for the service of the Almighty day by day.

13. And Jerusalem, with the whole land of Israel and the land of Aram, was in the hands of the Arabians four hundred and seventy years, till the kings of the West went forth in the year four thousand four hundred and sixty-six, when Godfrey of Bouillon, and the princes who were with him, going there, took it; and they dwelt therein eighty and eight years; until God raised up Saladin, the king of Egypt, who wrested it out of their hands, and sent them into another country, as it is at this day.

14. And Dagobert, king of France, slept with his fathers ; and his son Lewis reigned in his stead. And Lewis begat three sons, Clotaire, Childe-ric, and Theodoric. And Lewis slept with his fathers in the sixteenth year of his reign ; and Clotaire reigned in his stead, for he was the first-born ; and to him belonged the right of government. Clotaire reigned four years, and he had no sons, and he slept with his fathers. Then the men of Tzaphrath made his brother Theodoric king, al-though he was the youngest ; and their souls ab-horred Childeric, and they drove him away, and he went into Austrasia, where he abode some days.

15. And the heart of Theodoric* was much lifted up, and the men of Tzaphrath said, “What is this which we have done, that we have anointed this fool to be king over us ?” And they conspired against him, and drove him away, and called his brother. And he came into Tzaphrath ; for to him belonged the right of government. And Childeric† reigned at that time, and his heart was much lifted up ; and the nobles of Tzaphrath would not speak peaceably unto him. And it happened one day that the king commanded, and they took one of the nobles of his kingdom, and bound him to a pillar ; and his servants beat him

* תיאודוריקו.

† קלידרייקו.

with scourges ; and all his servants and his nobles were very wroth, so that they at length conspired against him : moreover, they rose against him and killed him when he returned from hunting ; and his wife also they killed on the same day. And the nobles of Tzaphrath made Theodoric king a second time ; and he was a priest unto his god at that time. And he reigned in Tzaphrath twenty-one years, and begat two sons, Clovis and Childebert, and he made them captains of the host at the head of the people. And Theodoric slept with his fathers ; and his first-born son Clovis reigned in his stead. And Clovis reigned three years, and had no sons, and slept with his fathers ; and his brother Childebert reigned after him for some time ; but he fell asleep with his fathers shortly after the beginning of his reign, when his son Dagobert, who was a child at that time, reigned in his stead. And this young king died, [ג] having lived to no purpose, and he left no prince in the land who should inherit the government.

16. And it came to pass, when the royal seed ceased, that the nobles chose Daniel, who was at that time a priest unto his god. And they made him king over them, and they called his name Chilperic, as it is until this day.* And Chilperic warred with Martel, son of Pepin. And it came to pass

* This phrase is retained in conformity with the Hebrew :—
לְיֹום הַזֶּה.

one day, that they set the battle in array, and Chilperic was smitten before Martel, and his men fell down slain to the ground. And Chilperic fled from before him, and went to Eudes*, the prince of the Gascons†, and dwelt with him there.

17. And Eudes spoke with Martel on the matter of the king; and they made a covenant among themselves, and he gave him back the cities of his kingdom, those cities only excepted which he had chosen. And the king returned to the throne of his kingdom. And King Chilperic at that time made Martel constable of France, the second to the king. And he slept with his fathers, and he also did not leave behind him any heir to the government.

18. Then the nobles of France, and Martel, the constable, chose Theodoric, who was like a saint in their eyes; and anointed him to be king over them. And Theodoric reigned in Tzarphath many days.

19. And King Theodoric was perfect and upright. And it came to pass, that the name only of king was given to him, and all the rest of the government matters belonged unto Martel, the chief captain of his host: so that whosoever had any matter, came unto him. And Martel fought against the Suevi, and they fell under his feet.

* אִוְדוֹנִי Jaudoni.

הַנוֹאשָׁקִים † perhaps a typographical error for הַנוֹאשָׁקִים the Gascons.

20. In those days Abdimoiro*, that is, Abdimirus†, king of Spain, fought against the land of Tzaphrath. And the Almighty gave Bourdeaux ‡ and Poitiers into his hands ; and he placed a guard in the midst of them. Then Martel gathered together men of valour, and went out against him, with a strong hand ; and they put themselves in battle array. And the men of Abdimirus were smitten, and fell down slain to the ground. Then took Martel from the hand of Abdimirus all the cities which he had subdued, and drove him out from his country. And Martel caused the kingdom of the French to be held in honour and renown ; for he did great deeds. And Martel begat three sons, namely, Charles, Pepin, and Griffon, who waxed very great.

21. And Martel was in Tzaphrath, during fifteen years, the man who brought every one out and in to his place ; and his fame went throughout the whole earth ; and he divided the kingdom among his sons after him, whilst the king was yet alive. And the king did not withhold from him any thing of all that he purposed to do. And he gave to Charles Austrasia||, Allemania, and Lorraine§. And Pepin he made constable and chief of the French. And of Griffon, the third, he said nothing, but forgot him. And Martel slept with his fathers ; and his

* אַבְדִימִירוֹ

† אַבְדִימִירָס

‡ Bordigala

§ לֹתָרִינְגִיָה

|| The Hebrew text has דְּאוֹשְׁטְרִיאָה.

sons buried him as he had commanded them. And Charles did great things; and they called him Carloman* till the day of his death. And it came to pass, when he was filled with honours, that he went to the house of the monks which he had built upon mount Sotracte†; and he worshipped his graven image‡ there many days. And he chose to be at rest, still more alone; and he went to mount Casino§, and abode there, putting his brother Pepin in his place, whilst King Theodoric was yet alive: and his government was firmly established. And Theodoric, on account of his sloth, was held in contempt by all the nations. And Pope Zacharias anointed Pepin to be king; and Theodoric returned to worship his graven image, as he was wont to do whilst he was there. And Pepin did great and mighty deeds, the memory of which will not cease for ever.

22. And the Lombards, with their wives and children, came into Italy from the extremity of the north country; for the land of their sojourning could not support them. And they plundered Italy. And Stephen, the pope, fled before them from Rome, because he feared for his life. This is the Stephen whom they chose to be pope in the days of Pepin, in the year seven hundred and fifty-two. And King Pepin passed over into Italy

* קָרְלוֹ מָנוּ שׁוֹטְרָקְטִי † probably Soracte.

• ‡ Crucifix.

§ קַאֲשֵׁנוּ

with a strong hand, to deliver it from the hand of the Lombards ; and he set the battle in array against them, and they fell under his feet, being amazed before him. And he restored Stephen to his throne at Rome, as before, and returned to Tzaphrath with a high hand. And he made statutes and laws in Tzaphrath, to establish peace in the land in those days, and appointed counsellors of the king, and gave them Paris for a place to dwell in : and they dwell there unto this day. And he had two sons. The name of the one was Charles ; that is he who was called Charlemagne, which is, being interpreted, Charles the Great, for he did great things. And the name of the second was Carloman. And the nobles called them kings of the earth in those days. And Pepin slept with his fathers. And Carloman closed his days also, and Charles the Great reigned in their stead, in every region of that kingdom. And he also passed over into Italy, with a numerous people and with a strong hand, to deliver it from the hand of the Lombards. And he took Pavia, the city of their kingdom, before he was called by Adrian, the pope. And Desiderius, the last king of the Lombards, he took alive, and set a watch over him. At that time Charlemagne brought back the Roman throne to its former glory. And Adrian, the pope, rewarded

him according to his merit, establishing for him great and strong laws according to his heart's desire: and he returned into Tzarphath. This is Adrian, whom the uncircumcised chose to be ruler, in the year seven hundred and seventy-two. And Charles passed over the river Rhine, and fought against the Saxons many days, and made them servants unto tribute. And Charles commanded, and they forsook their idols, and believed in his messiah; and he made his heart like the heart of a god. And Charles thought to fight also against the Ishmaelites* which were in Sphard† in those days. And Charlemagne fought also against the Hungarians, and trod upon them as upon the mire of the streets; and they fled from before him.

23. And Pope Adrian died in the year seven hundred and ninety-six, and the uncircumcised chose Leo; and he was ruler over them. And Pope Leo placed the imperial crown upon the head of Charlemagne, on account of all the great things he had done, in the year eight hundred and two.‡ And his fame went throughout all the earth. And Charles enlarged Paris, his capital. And he chose from among them wise men skilled in books,

* The Moors of Spain. † Spain.

‡ The Hebrew text has 802 instead of 800; and the marginal date is 820. This latter date seems to be a typographical error.

learned in all kinds of wisdom, to teach their young men reading. And Charlemagne begat three sons, Pepin, and Charles, and Lewis. And he made his first-born son, Pepin, king in Italy; and the second, Charles, he made king in Tzaphath; and they died before their father: and he made his third son, Lewis, king in their stead: and Charlemagne reigned forty-seven years, and he died; and they buried him at Aquis Granum*: and the government was established in the hand of Lewis, his son, in the year eight hundred and fifteen from the coming of their messiah. And Lewis was a man compassionate and tender, and he did not prosper in his kingdom; for his sons revolted against him, and put him in prison, and set a watch over him. And he gave them the empire in his wrath and in the heat of his displeasure; and he departed from them to worship his god. And it came to pass, after only a few days, that the people and the nobles replaced him on his throne, for their wrath was kindled by reason of this evil deed, and because the dread of his first-born son, Lothaire, fell upon them. And when Lewis [ל] was seventy-four years old he died; and the empire was divided under four heads†. His son Charles reigned in Tzaphath; and

* Aix la Chapelle.

† לאשׁם .

Lothaire, the eldest, in Ashkenaz*; and Lewis, in Bavaria; and unto Pepin, their brother's son, was given Aquitaine, at that time. Then Lothaire and his brother Lewis fought against King Charles, but he moved not before them; and they fell under his feet. And they made a covenant between themselves, and every one laid down his weapon of war; and the country had rest. And Lothaire desired to serve his graven image, and he left his empire unto Lothaire and Lewis, his sons, according as he commanded them. And Lothaire reigned in Italy; and King Charles went against him with a mighty hand; and he drove him away, together with his brother, because of what his father had done unto him; for Charles feared lest the crown of the empire should fall to him, as he had designed to do. But Lothaire died without being desired; for the thoughts of men are but vanity, but the counsel of the Lord will stand. And Charles returned again into Italy, to deliver the pope from the hands of his spoilers. And he took in hand *to fight against* the Hagarenes, who laid waste all places at that time. And the Pope John† recompensed him according to his deserts, putting the imperial crown upon his head, so that his empire was firmly established. This is that

* Germany.

† אַנְגִיל.

John whom the uncircumcised chose in the year eight hundred and seventy-two; and he was a ruler over them.

24. And Charles died, and his son Lewis reigned in his stead; and the people called him Balbo*, for he was slow of speech and of a heavy tongue; and he set not his heart on war, for he saw rest that it was good. And he also was called "Emperor," by Pope John, as his father had been called. And he put the imperial crown upon his head. And Lewis begat two sons, but not of his wife, for she was barren and did not bring forth. And Lewis died; and his first-born son, Lewis, reigned in his stead. And unto Carloman, the second, was given Aquitaine and Burgundy; and he was a ruler unto them. And Carloman begat Rodolph, who afterwards reigned in Tzaphrath. And Lewis lived some days, and then he died; and his son Charles reigned after him. And these are the generations of Charles. Charles was perfect and upright in his generation; he feared God and eschewed evil. And there fought against him Rollo† of Normandy, who had served Baal many days. And Charles consented to give him his daughter to wife, and the province of Neustria, as a dowry and gift, save only that Rollo should change his law for the law

* *Balbus*, stammerer.

רְלוֹנוּ †

of Jesus, their messiah. And the thing seemed good in the eyes of Rollo*, and they called his name Robert, unto the day of his death. And they gave unto him the daughter of the king and the province of Neustria, and changed its name to Normandy, as it is unto this day. And it came to pass, after a short time, that Robert dealt treacherously with his father-in-law, and fought against him, and remembered not the covenant which he had made with him. Then Charles went out to meet him; and whithersoever he turned he prospered; and his strength and his power were seen at that time. And it came to pass, when he returned unto his house, that he passed by the way of Peronne†, for he was allured thither by Herbert‡, the chief of the Vermandois §. And Herbert bound him with chains, and afflicted his life with fetters, until the day of his death. And his wife took her little son Lewis, and fled to the house of her father the king of England. And they dwelt there many days. Therefore the French made Rodolph, the son of

* This statement is erroneous; Rollo and Robert were two different persons. Rollo kept his faith with Charles and refused to combine with Robert, who was styled duke of France, in a rebellion against Charles. Robert died in a battle fought against Charles. Rollo was dead before the commencement of the war.

† פִּרְנוֹנָה. אַיְבִּרְטוֹ. Iberto.

§ הוַיּוֹרָמָנָדִי, the Viromandi.

Carloman, duke of Burgundy, king over them; and he reigned about ten years. And King Charles died in prison, in the tenth year of Rodolph. And there was another mind among many of the great men of the French at that time; for God had touched their hearts. And they called Lewis, the son of Charles, their king, while he was dwelling in England, as one of the people* at that time. And it came to pass, when he came into Normandy, that they bound him and oppressed him with want some days: but the Lord repented him of the evil, and brought him out from the prison-house, and they made this Lewis king over themselves in the stead of his father Charles; and he took the daughter of Otho, king of Ashkenaz, to wife, and she bare him two sons, Lothaire and Charles. And Lewis died in the year nine hundred and sixty, and his son Lothaire reigned in his stead: and Charles wished to live as one of the people; and his portion fell unto his brethren. And Lothaire did no great thing, except that he fought against the Normans, who were smitten before him. And he slept with his fathers, and had no son: and his brother, who at the first despised the government, sought to be king in his brother's stead. And it happened,

* In private life.

when he came, that his enemies seized him near Landen*, and set a watch over him. And in those days, Charles begat two sons, Lewis and Charles. And the war was strong in Tzaphrath; and every one behaved proudly towards his neighbour, for they were many who sought to reign over this great kingdom.

25. And those which came forth from the loins of Martel retained no more strength. And there reigned in their stead, by means of many stratagems, Hugh, the son of Hugh the Great†, and son of the sister of Otho, the emperor. His government was established in his hand in the year nine hundred and eighty-seven, and nations were obedient unto him. And Hugh slept with his fathers in the ninth year of his reign; and his son Robert reigned in his stead. And Robert was a wise statesman, and an eloquent orator: he knew the statutes of the empire and its laws. And he drove out Henry, the duke of Burgundy: and Laudrico‡, the duke of Antwerp§, clothed himself with vengeance against him, saying, that he was the nearest of kin unto him, and to him

* לְאַנְדִּינָו; perhaps Landen (Landinum), a small town in Brabant.

† אַנְזִין חֲנֹדוֹל אַנְזִין is probably a mis-spelling for אַנוֹנוֹ; as the Hugh who reigned was the son of Hugh the Great.

‡ לְאַבְדְּרִיקָו. § אַנוּוֹירֶשָׁה, Auversa.

belonged the right of inheritance. And the hand of King Robert was strong, and he took the whole of Burgundy; and the war ceased. And Robert reigned twenty-four years, and slept with his fathers. And he had five sons; and these were their names, Henry and Robert, by his first wife; Hugh*, by the second; Simon and Almarico, by the third.

26. And Henry reigned in the stead of his father; and unto Robert was given Burgundy at that time. And his brethren envied him; and they drove him away, and took all his land from his hand. And Henry fled away from before them to the duke of Normandy, who was one of his supporters; and he brought him back to his royal throne, and the war ceased.

27. And it came to pass in those days, that the Turks said, “We will place heads over all the nations which are round about us, even the men which are keepers of cattle.” And from the uttermost part of the north, from Tartary, went these tribes out for the first time in the days of Pepin king of Tzaphrath. And they fought against the Hungarians, and destroyed much people from among them. And they went their way, and

* אַוְנוֹן. Hugh was the eldest son of Robert. Henry and Robert were the children of his second wife. Constance of Provence, his *second* wife, survived him.

they captured all that was trodden by the soles of their feet; and they devoured the spoils of their enemies, one portion as well as the other; and they put chiefs over them, and no man could stand before them. And they took the circuit of Cappadocia, and Asia* also, and the countries which were near them. And they went from the Ionian Sea† unto the Ægean Sea‡; and they had no king many days. And they sought and found among themselves ḥone hundred families, of men of renown; and they cast lots among themselves; and the lot fell upon the family of Hilduk§: and they again chose a hundred men. And they cast [ה] lots a second time, and the lot fell upon Seljuk||, and him they made king over them. And the man was of a fair countenance, as one of the king's sons, a mighty hero and a man of war. And he went out from before them in the days of this Henry, king of Tzaphrath, and in the days of his son; and whithersoever he turned he prospered, for the Lord was with him. And they made war against the king of Egypt, and took the land of Aram and Jerusalem, and the cities round about it, with a mighty hand. And they embittered with hard labour the lives of the uncircumcised whom they found there, and made their yoke heavy upon them.

* Asia Minor.

† איאוניאו.

‡ איניאו.

§ למשפחת הילדוקיאו.

|| שילזוק, probably Seljuk.

And the Ishmaelites returned again, and took from their hands Jerusalem and its environs, in the year when Godfrey came to Jerusalem.

28. And Henry caused his son Philip to reign in his stead ; and he died in the year one thousand and sixty. And the government was firmly established in the hand of King Philip, who took the daughter of Baldwin, duke of Holland, to wife ; and she bare him a son.

29. And Philip bought the Biturisinsi* from the Duke Alpin† ; for he went with Godfrey to the east country, and sold his inheritance.

30. There was a Jewish man at Granada, which is in Sphard, Joseph the Levite, son of the noble rabbi, whose name was Samuel, in the year four thousand eight hundred and twenty-four. This is that noble man who showed kindness unto Israel in Sphard, and in the west country, and in Africa, and in the land of Egypt : and Joseph walked in the ways of his father, and he lacked nothing ; but his humility was not like unto his father's, for he bare no yoke in his youth ; and his heart became exalted nigh unto destruction : and the great men of Granada envied him, and they could not speak peaceably unto him : more-

* ביטורייסינש. Perhaps the people of Bourges, the capital of Berry ; Biturigæ, according to Ammianus Marcellinus.

† אלפינו.

over they rose up against him on the sabbath day, on the ninth day of the month Tebeth*, and slew him ; and, all the congregation also, and the Jews that were come from afar off to witness his wisdom and his greatness, they slew with the edge of the sword on that bitter day. And there was great mourning for them in all the countries which heard these evil tidings. See thou, O Lord ! behold, and plead their cause !

31. And Peter the hermit, the priest, went to Jerusalem in the year four thousand eight hundred and fifty-six, this is the year one thousand and ninety-six, and there he beheld the burdens of the uncircumcised and the hard work which was laid upon them ; and he was zealous for his brethren†. And he returned to Rome, and told in the ears of Pope Urban, all that his eyes had seen, and the burdens of the uncircumcised which were at Jerusalem in those days.

32. And they called a council at Clermont : and the pope said unto the princes, “Come ye; let us go up unto the mountain of the Lord, and we will take it out of the hands of the Ishmaelites ; for it is a shame for us to leave the holy land in the hands of those dogs.” And many hearkened unto his voice ; and their hearts were willing to

* תְּבֵת, Tebeth coincides nearly with December.

† The Christians.

go, and they made the cross for a sign on their garments in that day. Moreover, Peter spake in the ears of the nations and the princes; and many hearkened unto his voice, and gave their hearts to go to war in the land of Judah and in the holy city at that time. And they gathered themselves together from all lands; from Ashkenaz, and from Tzaphrath, and from Sphard, and from England, and Scotland, and Italy, much people, which for multitude could not be numbered, men and women, all whose spirit was willing to go, kings and counsellors of the earth, great and small, rich and poor, strong and weak, priests and bishops together; and of them it was said, “The locusts have no king, yet go they forth all of them by bands.”*

33. That year was a year of sorrow for Jacob; and they were given over to plunder in the countries of the uncircumcised, and in all the places where they were scattered. And upon them fell many sorrows and devastations, which are written in the law of Moses, and which cannot be told in a book; for the abominable Germans and French rose up against them—people of a fierce countenance, that have no respect to the persons of

* Prov. xxx. 27. Comp. Luneb. Chr. 1350. De Man let den Ploch stan, de Herde dat Vc, de Wief liep mit der Wige, de Munik ut dem Closterc, de Nunnen woren oc darmede.

of the old, neither have they mercy upon the young. And they said, “Let us be revenged for our Messiah, upon the Jews which are among us; and let us destroy them from being a nation, that the name of Israel may be had no more in remembrance: so shall they change their glory and they will be like unto us:—then we will go to the East.” And when the congregations which were in Ashkenaz heard these fearful tidings, their hearts melted within them, and became like water; and trembling took hold upon them, as pain upon a woman in her travail. And they bare their lives upon their hands*, and proclaimed a fast, and put ashes upon their heads, and girded themselves with sackcloth, and cried unto the Lord in their distress: but He covered himself with a cloud, that the prayer should not pass through.

34. And the enemies rose up against the holy congregation of Spires, on the sabbath day, the eighth day of the month Iyar†, which is the second month. And they slew of them ten men with the edge of the sword, because they would

* **וַיִּשְׂאוּ לִבְבָם אֶל כְּפִים**, Hebraism for—‘they exposed their lives to imminent danger by boldly proclaiming a fast.’

† **אֵייר** is the Chaldee name for **צִוִּים**, the second Mosaical month beginning on the first new moon in May, and answering to our May, as strictly as a lunar month can do.

not be defiled by the proud water*. And there was a pious woman, and she chose death rather than life; and she took a knife, and slew herself, because she would not be defiled at that time. And she was the first of them that slew themselves, and of them that were slain: and she said, "The Lord is my portion, I hope for Him." And the rest were saved by the hand of the bishop; for his eyes had compassion upon them, and he delivered them out of the hand of the enemy. And Eliezer mourned over them at that time.

35. And on the twenty-third day of the same month, there arose oppressors upon the holy community which is in Worms; and many fled into the house of the bishop, for they were afraid lest some evil should overtake them. And they entered into the houses, and slew there them which were found with the edge of the sword, they had no compassion upon man nor woman. And they pulled down houses, and cast down the strong places, and they put forth their hand to the spoil; and there was none to deliver out of their hand in the day of the Lord's vengeance. And the Books of the Law they cast to the ground, and trod them under their feet; and they uttered their voice in

* Of baptism.

the house of the Lord as in a day of solemn feast*. And they said, “Aha! this is the day for which we have longed:” and they devoured Israel in every corner. O Lord, behold, and see! They left none alive, save the children and sucklings, which were defiled with the proud water by force. But it came to pass afterwards, that they esteemed their fear as vanity, and their persons as the mire of the streets; and they said, “Let us return to the Lord our God,” because fury was over them, and the slain did sanctify the Holy One of Israel in the eyes of the sun; and they chose death rather than life, for they refused to be defiled. Many did slay themselves, every one his brother and his neighbour, his sons and his daughters, the bridegroom and the bride, and the wife of his bosom. And from compassion, the women slew their children with all their heart and with all their soul; and they said “**HEAR, O ISRAEL!**†” when their souls were poured out into their mother’s bosoms.

* Lam. ii. 7.

† שְׁמַע יִשְׂרָאֵל, the commencement of the Jews’ confession: “Hear, O Israel! the Lord our God is one Lord: and thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might,” &c. Deut. vi. 4, 5. These words are written upon the phylacteries of the Jews, and often repeated under trials of faith, and they are usually recited beside the death-bed of a Jew.

36. And it came to pass, after seven days, on the first day of the month Sivan*, that they did unto them who fled into the house of the bishop, as unto the first ; and they mocked them, and slew many with the edge of the sword. And they also did like unto their brethren, and slew every one his neighbour, and the mothers and the children were dashed in pieces in the day of the Lord's anger; a small remnant only escaped on that bitter and evil day.

37. And the number of them that died in that slaughter on those two days, was about eight hundred souls. And among them was a young man, Simchah the priest was his name, and they led him away unto their house of errors† by force, to change his glory. And he took a knife from his bosom and slew a kinsman of the bishop, a nobleman of the city, [ג] and they pierced him also with swords that he died. For these things I weep; for them will I make lamentation and mourning ; a mourning like the dragons, a lamentation like the daughters of the ostrich‡. And

* סין the third month of the Mosaical year was computed from the first new moon in June. From the variations of the lunar month part of סין may fall in July.

† בית טעותם, *house of their errors*, a contemptuous expression for a church.

‡ לבנות יענה, *cibnōt yūnah*, *filiæ struthionis*, i. e. *struthiones*. Ostriches are alluded to in several passages of the Old Testament as in-

Eliezer also made lamentation over them at that time : but, forasmuch as he was slow of speech, I thought it strange, and I have not set it forth here*.

38. And when the holy assembly of Mayence† heard these evil tidings, their hearts were poured out and became like water ; and they all fled into the house of the bishop, which they accounted a city of refuge, to deliver their lives from destruction ; and the enemies rose upon them on the third day of the month Sivan, and slew them with the edge of the sword ; and they regarded not the countenance of the aged on that fearful day : and it came to pass, when the enemies fell upon them, that they cried with a loud voice, “**Hear, O Israel !**‡” And they put forth their hands to the pleasant things in their sight§, and slew their wives and their children. The women also filled their hands *with instruments of destruction* on that bitter day. And some of the old men covered themselves with their praying garments||, and said, “He is the Rock, His works are perfect.”

habiting solitary places, and uttering plaintive sounds ; see Is. xiii. 21 ; xxxiv. 13. Mich. i. 8. Job xxx. 29.

* The Rabbi would not insert the elegy of Eliezer, because it sounded uncouthly.

† **מנאנצה**.

‡ See page 33, note.

§ The objects of their love and affection.

|| **טליתות**, Veils made of wool or hair, which the Jews put over their heads during their devotions.

Whereupon the daughters of Israel took up a lamentation; and every one instructed her neighbour in mourning, saying, “Behold, the valiant ones shall cry from without, the ambassadors of peace shall weep very bitterly for this holy congregation, against which the hewer is come up with axes, as hewers of wood.” For this also will I lament and mourn, I will go stripped and bare; for thirteen hundred souls were spoiled at this fearful time. Wilt thou refrain thyself for these things, O Lord ?*

39. And sixty souls were hid in the treasure-house; and the bishop sent them into the villages which are called Rinconah†, to save them from their hands. And the enemies pursued after them and killed them; and in all places whithersoever they fled, the stones in the wall uttered a cry against them, to confound and to destroy them; for there was given permission to the destroyer to consume in those evil days. And two were saved who were defiled by force; the name of the one was Uri, and the name of the other was Isaac, the son of David the manager‡, and his two daughters

* Is. lxiv. 12.

† רינקונה Rinconah. Perhaps this name is a corruption of *Rimmagen*, in Latin *Rigomagum*, a small town on the Rhine to the south of Cologne, or more probably the *Rheingau*.

‡ פרנס, the manager of the secular affairs of the synagogue, or the head of the trustees upon whom devolve the reception and the distribution of alms.

with him ; and they returned unto the Lord. And Isaac slew his daughter on the evening of the Feast of Weeks*, and kindled a fire in his house and brought a burnt offering unto the Lord. And he went with Uri into the synagogue, before the ark ; and they died there before the Lord, when the flame went up. My heart, my heart is with their slain, and with them which are burned in the fire ; my soul refuses to be comforted. Plead, O Lord, the cause of their souls ! judge righteous judgment, and avenge thou the blood of thy servants which was spilled, as it is written, “ I will cleanse their blood *that I have not cleansed* ; for the Lord dwelleth in Zion†.”

40. And these dreadful tidings came unto the holy congregation of Cologne, on the fifth day of the month Sivan, and the Jews ran hither and thither, and hid themselves in the houses of their acquaintance : and it came to pass in the morning, and behold there were voices and trembling, and fear as of a woman in her travail. And the enemies arose, and broke down the houses, and plundered and took much spoil ; and there was none to deliver out of their hands. And the people rushed into the prayer-houses‡, and took out the Books of the Law, and made sport of

* Pentecost.

† Joel iii. 21.

‡ Synagogues.

them, and gave them to be trodden upon in the streets, on the feast day of the Lord, on that day in the which the Law was proclaimed, when the earth trembled, and the pillars thereof did shake; but now was it torn in pieces and trampled upon: the proud did burn it, evil-doers defiled it. Shall not the Lord of Hosts, the righteous Judge, visit for these things?

41. And they took Master Isaac, who would not flee, and they led him into the house of their absurdity*. And he spat upon their image; and scorned and blasphemed them: and they killed him; and a woman also they killed at the same time. And it came to pass, on the tenth day of the month, when the fury was passed over, that the bishop sent them which were hid in the houses of their acquaintance into the villages. And he distributed them among seven places to save them, and they remained there until the fourth month. And they fasted in those days daily, and they made vows and prayed unto God.

42. And it came to pass, on the second day in the second month, that the abominable enemies went into the village of Nosa†; and also a mixed multitude went with them at that time.

* Church.

† נוֹסָן. This name, like some others mentioned, is difficult to be ascertained. Perhaps Nossen, a small town on the river Mulda, near Meissen and Dresden.

And they rose up against Samuel the son of Asher, the Jew, and they killed him, and his two sons with him ; and they trod them down like the mire of the streets, and his sons they hanged at the entrance of his house, and they mocked them, and blasphemed the people of the living God. And now, O Lord, thou art a God of vengeance ; thou wilt not blot out their sins : in the hour of thine anger thou wilt work among them !

43. And it came to pass, on the morrow, that they arose against those dejected Jews which were in the city of Voblatzak*, to make haste to swallow them up alive. And there was Rabbi Levi, the son of Samuel, and his household, and the old mistress Rachael, and Rabbi Solomon the priest, and all the rest of the Jews, which he led away with him to escape thither. And it came to pass, when the evil was come upon them, that they also filled their hand†, and the Holy One of Israel was sanctified by them. And they killed every one his neighbour, lest the uncircumcised should evil entreat them, in the midst of the water-pools which were round about the city. And there fell there children and women, bridegrooms and

* וּבְלַצָּק. The Hebraist will perceive that these unpointed consonants may be read in various ways, according to the variety of vowels which may be substituted.

† They took the matter in hand.

brides, and old women together ; and they sacrificed peace offerings unto the Lord ; and their undefiled souls went up into heaven.

44. And there was among them that went up thither, an old man stricken in years; Rabbi Samuel, son of Rabbi Jechiel, was his name ; and this man was perfect and upright, fearing God and eschewing evil ; and he had an only son, choice as the cedars*, and he fled away with his father from the midst of the water ; and the youth stretched out his neck, and the old man took the knife and pronounced a blessing on the sacrifice ; and he slew him, the youth answering, “Amen !” And all the by-standers answered and said, “**Hear, O Israel !**” Behold and see, all ye that pass by the way, if there be any sorrow like unto their sorrow, and their strength, and the power which filled their heart to do it. Or was there ever such a thing heard from the day that the Lord created man upon the earth ? Wo unto the eyes which beheld it !

45. And there was there a young man who feared God, the beadle of the synagogue, his name was Menahem. And the old man said unto him, “Take my sword, and slay me upon my son :” and the young man strengthened himself†, and slew him, and he died also there. And many like these

* Cant. v. 15.

† He took courage.

destroyed themselves, who chose death rather than life : these all sanctified the Holy One of Israel before the eyes of the sun, for they would not be defiled by the proud waters. And some of them were drowned in the waters, and they sank in the deep like a stone ; there were not left of them save two or three berries on the top of the uttermost bough.

46. And on the third day of this terrible month, were slain the Jews that were in Ilnirah* ; there were not left of them save a very few men, and they† filled also their hands at that time‡. And they seized Rabbi Isaac, the Levite, and put him to torture ; and they wounded him, and bruised him, and they defiled him with the proud waters. And he knew it not, for there was but a step between him and death ; and when his soul returned, he went unto Cologne after three days, and entered into his own house, and in one hour destroyed himself. He went out unto the river Rhine, and drowned himself in the river ; and of him it is said, “ I will bring back from the depths of the sea§.”

47. And on the fourth day of the month, on the eve of the sabbath, they were assembled against the vineyard of the Lord, which was at Ilnirah, to

* אַלְנִירָה or perhaps אַלְנִירָה.

† Perhaps here the uncircumcised, or Christians, are intended.

‡ They took up arms.

§ Ps. lxviii. 22.

torment and torture them, until they should consent to be defiled by the proud waters. And when the Jews heard these evil tidings, they gathered themselves together, in one chamber, before their coming ; and they were [i] about three hundred souls ; and they cried bitterly, “ Alas ! ” before the Lord ; and the heads of the people consented to slay all of them at that time ; and these are the names of the chiefs :—Rabbi Gershom, Mar Judah, and Mar Joseph, his brother, the sons of Abraham, Rabbi Judah, the son of our Rabbi Samuel the Levite, and Rabbi Peter. And these men arose, and took hold of their swords, and shut the doors, and they slew them as one man, on that fearful day. Then Rabbi Peter killed also the other four ; and he went out upon the tower, and threw himself to the ground, and died before the Lord. There were left of all that holy community but two young men and two striplings : and they were also maliciously wounded ; but they lived.

48. And it came to pass at eventide that the Jews who were at Zantah* drank also the dregs of the cup of destruction, on that fearful day. And some of them hallowed the day when the wood-cutter† came upon them ; and they filled also their hands *with weapons* like their brethren ; and the Holy

* ΖΑΝΤΑΗ, perhaps the city of Xanten on the banks of the Rhine.

† Destroyer : our author compares the Israclites to cedars.

One of Israel was sanctified in them. And a rabbi of France dug in the ground, and blessed the sacrifice, and cut his own throat and died ; and all the people answered, “ HEAR, O ISRAEL !” And there was not a remnant or an escape left on the day of the Lord’s anger, save only a very small number, which were found wallowing in their blood amongst the dead at that time.

49. And on the seventh day of the month Tam-muz*, the enemies, the men of the host, rose upon the afflicted and broken people that were at Mirah†, and besieged the city ; and they were as the sand of the sea-shore. And they asked of the Jews to do with them according to their own pleasure ; even as they had done in all the cities which they had passed through. And the governor of the city went out to them, and spake unto the chief men of the host, saying, “ Wherein shall it profit us to slay the Jews, and conceal their blood ? And, now, stand without, and I will speak in their ears ; and what answer they shall give, that will I tell unto you. Peradventure the men will consent to be defiled‡, and become like unto us, and we shall be

* June.

מִירָה.

‡ The Rabbi, from the peculiarity of his religious opinions, would not put the word “ sanctified ” into the governor’s mouth ; and therefore, as that sanctification was in his apprehension a desecration, he substituted the word נְאַל “ defiled.”

free from blood-guiltiness." And his words were pleasing in the sight of the chief men of the host ; and they returned into the city. And he called all the Jews, and spake unto them, saying, " Ye know that which I have done unto you from my youth unto this day. And how I have delivered you from the hand of the wicked and the oppressor, according as I have vowed. Not a dog did sharpen his tongue against any one of you, and there was not a shoe-latchet taken from you (ye are my witnesses) unto this day. And now your eyes do see, that the children are come to the birth, and there is no strength to bring forth. This day is a day of trouble and anguish, a day of ruin and desolation—a day of wrath and rebuke is this day ; and I cannot stand against the rage of these smoking firebrands in fierce anger, lest they come and slay me and my people, the mother with the children. And now, choose for yourselves : either agree with them to be defiled, to be like unto us, or you will be given unto them, and they will do unto you, according as they have done in all the countries through which they have passed. Choose ye yourselves, that I may be clear of guilt." And they all answered as one man, and said, " It is better for us to die in the fear of the Lord, than that we should do this evil thing. And now, our lord,

we are in thy hand* ; do with us as seemeth good in thy sight : for evil is determined against us†, if on our account this great trouble is come upon you.” And when the governor saw that he could not prevail with them, he dealt cunningly with them, and sent many of them out by the hand of his servants. And he commanded, and the men returned into the city, their swords being stained with the blood of the beasts of the field. And they showed them unto the Jews, saying, “ See ye what has been done unto your brethren. After this manner will be done unto you, if you will not consent to be defiled to be like unto us.” And they all answered as one man, and said, “ We have no part in your covenant, and no inheritance in your faith ; do ye as it seemeth good in your sight, for the Lord our God is one God ; unto Him we will cleave ; Him we will serve ; and by Him we will swear all the days of our lives : we will not depart to the right hand nor to the left, from the commandments which Moses the servant of God has commanded us.”

50. And the governor commanded ; and they brought back the Jews whom he had sent out, and they put them in prison, one here and one there,

* This is not an address to the Divine Being, but to the governor.

† Est. vii. 7.

lest they should lay hands upon themselves, according as they had done in the rest of the cities. And there were two women, the name of the one was Gintel*, and the name of the other was Rebecca ; and the one bowed down and brought forth a son, for her pains had come upon her. And there was with them only one girl, very fair to look upon. And it came to pass, when they saw that the enemies rose against them, that they took the child and covered it with clothes, for their bowels yearned towards it ; and they cast it down from the tower, in which they were prisoners, to the ground.

51. And it came to pass, when the enemies saw what they had done, that they rose the next morning, and took them, and led them away by force unto the houses of their errors†, and they did with them according to their own will, and none said “Leave off.” Some of them they slew with the edge of the sword on that bitter day ; but some kneeled and prayed unto the image, and, changing their glory for what was unprofitable, they were defiled, to their sorrow and grief, with the proud waters‡.

52. There was among them a Jew, whose name was Shamriah ; and, Gaspar§, the bishop, said

* גינטיל.

† The author usually calls churches *the houses of errors*.

‡ The waters of baptism.

§ This name will indicate the time.

unto him, “Shamriah, fear not ; stay with me, and I will deliver thee from their hand.” And the man consented to stay with him. And he gave him the money which was found with him. And he led him and his wife and his three children away, and left them in a forest, until the ninth day of the month Ab, which is the fifth month*. And this Belial oppressed them, so far as to send to his sons, who were in Spires, to take from thence silver and gold. And they sent unto him the silver which was found with them ; and this Belial took it, and delivered them into the hand of their enemies. And the inhabitants of the village rejoiced over him, for they knew him ; and they granted unto him that he should not be defiled till the next day. And they did not eat any abominable thing on that day, for they said, “To-day we will act according to our own law, and to-morrow we will become one people.” And they went into the chamber, for they were bitterly afflicted and wearied ; and they lodged there and locked the door. And it came to pass in the morning watch, that sleep left his eyes ; and the man arose before any one could distinguish his neighbour, and he took the knife, and slaughtered his children and his wife. And the man slaughtered himself, and

* בָּא nearly coincides with August, being the fifth month of the ecclesiastical, and the eleventh of the civil year.

cut his throat ; but he could not finish it, for giddiness overcame him, and he fainted, and died not. And the morning dawned, and the enemies came unto him, and saw what he had done. And they said unto him, “Why hast thou acted thus? and why hast thou done this evil thing? Thy blood will be upon thine own head, and we shall be clear ; evil is determined against thee*. And now by this shall thy sins be forgiven, if thou wilt become like unto us ; and thou shalt be changed, and be a different man, and thy soul shall be saved. And if not, it will be worse with thee than it was with them, and thou shalt be buried alive with them.” And he said unto them, “Far be it from me to do this thing : do ye what seemeth best in your sight ; but I will not revolt against the Lord.” And they made a sepulchre, and he went on foot to be buried, and his wife was put at his right hand, and his children at his left ; and they cast dust upon them, and they said unto him, as at other times, “Turn unto our law, and thou shalt live, and not die.”• But he hearkened not unto them ; and they took three times the dust off from him, to see if he would be persuaded. But he would not hearken, and they covered him with dust. And his voice was heard

* Est. vii. 7. **בלתך עליך הרעה**, perfecta est supra te calamitas, i. e. thou shalt certainly suffer.

all the day, and they mocked him. Wilt thou restrain thyself at this, O Lord ! [ח]

53. Also in the village Carphana*, they did with the Jews according to their own desire ; and they polluted them with the water of their stench†, and some of them defiled themselves. Also, the Jews which were at Gilda‡ drank the dregs of the cup of the Lord's fury ; and he gave them to be robbed and plundered ; and none escaped nor remained in the day of the Lord's anger. “ Those that I have swaddled and brought up hath mine enemy consumed§.” “ For these things I weep ; mine eye, mine eye floweth with water¶.” Daughters of Israel, weep over them ; clothe not yourselves in silk garments ; put not on crimson ; for, because of our transgressions is glory departed from Judah. They surrounded him ; they pursued him without ceasing ; they trampled upon him ; they ill-treated him in the highway ; and Israel became very low.

54. And according as they did in those congregations, they did in Trèves and Metz, and in Reisburg¶, and in Prague : and they all hallowed the Holy One of Israel ; they would not be defiled.

* כַּרְפָּנָא.

† The Rabbi alludes to baptism.

‡ גִּילְדָּא.

§ Lam. ii. 22.

¶ Ibid. i. 16.

¶ בְּרִיסְבּוֹרֶק. Perhaps Presburg, or more probably Rhinsburg, or Rynsbourg, a small city on the Rhine in the Netherlands.

All these disturbances were from the month Iyar*, till the month Ab†, which is the fifth month ; and by them they were sanctified and made pure, to go up to God. “ These were the potters, and those that dwelt among plants and hedges : there they dwelt with the king for his work ‡.” These are they who gave up their souls for his sake, whose blood was spilled like water ; and He will give back unto them according to their doings, and according to the works of their hands. And their souls will be “ bound up in the bundle of life §,” in the temple of the King, the Lord of Hosts ; and their purity and their righteousness will stand as a defence for us. Amen, and Amen !

55. Joseph, the priest ||, saith, “ You have seen this great distress which befell the children of our people in those days : how they fasted and how they cried ; which I have copied from the account of Rabbi Eliezer, written at that time. But, besides him, I have found it written in general, in the books of the chronicles of the kings of Ashkenaz ¶. And now I begin to write what happened unto our enemies, in all the way they went ; that the children of Israel may know that the Lord is jealous ; and that the Eternal avengeth the blood

* מאי, May,

† אב, August.

‡ 1 Chron, iv. 23. These martyrs are the workmen and gardeners of the King of kings.

§ 1 Sam. xxv. 29.

|| The author of these Chronicles.

¶ German Emperors.

of his servants, which is spilled ; and that the *uncircumcised* also died on the road by the sword, by famine and pestilence, by thousands and tens of thousands, and there was only a small number left : and that they took also the land of Israel and Judah, and they polluted it with their abominations and their idols to the end of eighty-eight years. At last the verse was fulfilled by them ; ‘Your enemies shall be desolate upon her* :’ and they fell also a thousand at a time into the hands of them that sought their lives ; into the hands of the kings of Persia and Egypt, according as you will see, if the Lord spare me alive.’”

56. And at the head of the dreadful nations which went willingly to Jerusalem, were Godfrey duke of Lorraine, and Eustace and Baldwin, his brothers, and Hugh, the brother of Philip, king of Tzaphath, and many princes and honourable men ; who went also willingly : moreover, the cursed Peter†, the priest, went with them ; and he was unto them instead of eyes‡. And their number was about six hundred thousand men ; and they went seven ways, by sea and by land, for the countries could not bear them ; and every one looked his own way. And there was scarcely a house in the

* Lev. xxvi. 32. “ And your enemies which dwell there shall be astonished at it.”

† The hermit.

‡ Num. x. 31.

west, from which there did not go a man or a woman ; and some of them led with them their children, and returned no more unto their homes.

57. And Walter*, one of the chiefs of the host, and with him a very great multitude, set forth ; and he went on his journey by the way of Hungary, and he reached Constantinople. And he asked permission of the emperor to dwell in his country the days of winter, till Peter the priest should arrive : and Peter came also, and with him were about forty thousand men ; and his soul became weary on the road for the stiff-neckedness of his hosts ; and they slew some of them in Bulgaria ; and there were lost about ten thousand men, by reason of their many proud and wicked deeds ; and they took from him all the silver, which they gave him to give out to the poor on the road. And he found Walter there†, and they waited there till all the flocks‡ of *Crusaders* were assembled. And the emperor commanded, and they passed over in ships to the side of Natolia ; and they pitched their tents on the border of the sea, and they stayed there about two months, and they lacked nothing ; and the host “ waxed fat, and they kicked§ ;” and they went out from their tents about ten miles, and took every thing they

* Walter Habenicht. † At Constantinople. ‡ Troops.
§ Deut. xxxii. 15.

could find. And it came to pass, that they went day by day, and none in the country put them to shame about anything. And there went out again as at other times, about three thousand men, and one thousand horsemen. And Solyman, the prince of the Turks, who inhabited those countries, laid ambush for them. And they fell suddenly upon them, and slew them with the edge of the sword; there was not a man left. And it came to pass, when their voice was heard in the camp, that they all arose like one man; and they said, "Let us go and take vengeance for our brethren at their hand." And they would not hearken unto the nobles who ruled the people, and they wickedly spake foolishness, saying, "Because of want of courage, they refuse to go;" and they set themselves in battle-array, and they were twenty-five thousand footmen and five hundred horsemen clothed with coats of mail. And they went their way not far off; and Solyman attacked them with a strong hand, and with a numerous people, that could not be measured nor numbered. And they set themselves in battle-array there, and the uncircumcised fled, and turned their backs; and Solyman and his host pursued them unto their camp, and they defeated them with the edge of the sword. And Walter the chief of their host, fell also in that battle.

58. In those days set forth Kondikalkus* the priest, from the land of Ashkenaz†; and with him were fifteen thousand men. And he went also on his journey, by the way of Hungary; and he said unto the king, “Let me pass through thy country; we will go in the king’s highway, until we shall have passed over thy borders.” And the king consented to let them pass through, and to sell them provisions. And the people “became fat and kicked,” and they did in the kingdom, after their own desire, deeds that ought not to be done: and it was told unto the king; and his wrath was burning within him. And he gathered together his soldiers, and defeated them, making no difference between the good and the bad. And they who were left from the sword of the Hungarians returned home with shame.

59. After a few more days, were gathered together a numerous people in the countries of the west, and they also talked of going. And they went as sheep which have no shepherd; and they would not hearken unto the men of renown which were among them; but they went after the stubbornness of their own hearts, and they slew the Jews, who were found in all the places through which they passed; and they went

on their journey unto the place Zaburtig*, which is on the extremity of Hungary. But they could not pass over, for they hunted their steps, that they could not go; and they encamped on the other side of the river. And that place was very strong, between the river Danube and the river Lintasit†, and round about it were pools of water: and the king commanded them to be shut up, for he feared lest they should take revenge upon them for the others, whose blood they had spilled like water. And the men of the host said, “Behold, the people that follow us now are many, and we are in haste; let us go up against the tower and make therein a breach for us, and let us see what their dreams will be.” And they made a bridge over the river, and they besieged the town; and they made a trench round about, and they cast its walls to the ground; and it came to pass, when they were fighting with all their might till they had cast them down, that a fear from God came upon them, and they fled, when none pursued: and they left the city as it was, and the Hungarians pursued them; and of them they destroyed much people. And they were about two hundred thousand footmen, and three thousand horsemen.

* זָבֻרְטִין.

+ לִינְטָזִי. Perhaps the river of Lienz or Lintz, a town in the Tyrol; which river is now called the Drave.

And there arose no more spirit in them, to stand against the Hungarians, who were but a small number. And the rest returned unto their homes; for they would not go any more. And some of them travelled by the way of Italy, and passed over [the] sea ; and they went unto Durazzo, and they mixed with the men of the host whom they found there ; and they went on their way.

60. In that year went Godfrey, and the princes who were with him, unto Hungary ; and the king let them pass, for they supplicated before him ; and they passed through with peace. And they went through Bulgaria, and they came unto Philippopolis, which is on the extremity of the land of Javan*. And when they heard there that Hugh, the brother of Philip, king of Tzarthath, and the princes which were with him, were taken in the pits of the emperor of Constantinople, it grieved Godfrey much ; and he sent messengers unto the emperor, saying, “Thus saith thy brother Godfrey, Send back those princes, for what is their offence or transgression, that this folly should be done to them?” But the emperor hearkened not unto their words, to send them away from him. And the men *sent with the message*, returned, and they told him the words of the emperor, and his wrath was much

* Greece.

kindled. And they gave the cities of the emperor to be robbed and plundered; and the city of Constantinople was in consternation. And the emperor was amazed, and feared, and was much distressed ; and he brought out the princes from the prison-house, and they went their way. And the emperor sent messengers unto Godfrey, the chief of the host, to find grace in his sight, and to bring him to him unto the city ; but he would not hearken. And the emperor said, “ Verily, can I not honour them ? ” and his wrath was kindled ; and he commanded, and they made proclamation that there should be given no provision unto them ; and the souls of the people became weary of hunger, and they went northward and southward, to make booty for *the support of* their lives ; and they plundered all they could find : they had no compassion upon man nor woman. And it repented the emperor ; and he commanded, and they sold them provisions : and their wrath was appeased. And the emperor said, “ Now this multitude will lick up every thing round about us ; and he also gathered together soldiers, and they fell suddenly upon them, and destroyed much people of them. And all the men of the host rose against them, and they slew the Greeks with the edge of the sword ; and the rest fled into the city, for evil was determined against them. And

they fought day by day, and the Greeks fled before them, for they were inexperienced *in warfare*. And day by day the officers of the armies came from all the countries; for there were all the troops gathered: and the soldiers multiplied greatly. And the emperor was afraid of the people, for they were many, and he became weary of them, and he called to them for peace; and they answered, “Peace.” And the emperor gave them gifts, and jewels of silver and jewels of gold, and precious stones, to find grace in their sight; and the men wondered much. But his heart was not upright with them, for he did all this out of fear; “but the Lord trieth the heart*.”

61. And Godfrey, and the princes who were with him, heard that the chiefs of the host which came after them were near; and they pressed forward by the aid of the emperor, to pass also over in ships unto the side of Bithynia, and they pitched their tents there: and the place is very near unto Constantinople. And the emperor carried them over in ships, as at other times, when the files of the soldiers arrived; for he was afraid of them, lest they should gather themselves together before the city.

62. And it came to pass, when all the people were gone over the sea called Hellespont†, when

* Prov. xvii. 3.

אילישפונטו †

they were in Bithynia*, that they took the number of the warlike men. And all those whom they numbered, were six hundred thousand footmen and one hundred thousand horsemen, clad in coats of mail. All these were encamped against the great city Nice†, and they fought against it, and took it; and they laid their hands on the spoil, and there was none to deliver.

63. And the city of Nice with the environs round about were under the government of a valiant man, mighty in deeds, whose name was Satrap Solyman‡; and he was a Turk, who reigned from Tarsus§ unto the Hellespont in those days. And he, also, gathered together soldiers from all the east country, to deliver the city from their hands: and the men of the host went out against him; and he could not stand before them, and he turned back: and the city was taken in the year one thousand and ninety seven, in the fourth month, which is the month Tammuz||, on the twentieth day of the month: and they took captive the wife of Solyman and his sons at that time; and it grieved Solyman much.

64. And the men of the host removed thence,

נִכְיָאָה † בִּתְיָנִיָּה *

סָאתְרָאָפָא סָוְלִימָאָן ‡, official title and proper name confounded.

תְּרִשְׁיָשָׁה § || The fourth sacred or tenth civil month, June.

and went their way unto the city of Antioch* ; and it came to pass, as they were journeying, that Boemond†, and the princes which were with him, and the men which followed them went first ; and between them and the host which moved after them, was a space of about two thousand cubits. And Solyman attacked them like a bear bereaved of her whelps ; for his soul was embittered about the city, and his wife, and his children : and he destroyed of them much people ; and the rest turned their backs and fled before him. And when Godfrey‡ heard it, he came with his host, as an eagle would fly ; and Solyman and the men which were with him fled before him : and they were glad to escape with their lives ; and there fell of the Turks on that day about three thousand men, and of the uncircumcised about four thousand men and women ; for they had women in multitudes in the camp.

65. And they passed over from Bithynia, and they came unto Pisidia§ : and there was no water for the people to drink ; and much people of them died of thirst. And they removed from that place and encamped near to little Antioch, which is the metropolitan city in the country of Pisidia ; and they found water to drink.

* אנטוֹקְיָה.

† בּוֹאַמְונְדוּ, son of Robert Guiscard, and cousin of Tancred.
‡ נוֹטִיףְרִידּוּ.

§ פִישִׁידְיָה.

66. And Baldwin*, the brother of Godfrey, and with him about seven thousand men, bearing coats of mail ; and Tancred, and with him five thousand men riding upon horses, and footmen, removed from thence ; and they went unto the land of Cilicia†, and they came unto Tarsus‡ ; and they encamped against it. And Tarsus the Great is a metropolitan city in that country, which Tarsus, the son of Javan, the son of Japheth, the son of Noah had built ; and they fought against it until it was subdued ; and they gave it into their hands. And Baldwin took it ; for the men which were with him were many : and he sent away Tancred§. And the Turks which were in the midst of it went their way. And the men which were in it were Nazarenes ; and most of them were tillers of the ground, and merchants of the country ; and they had been servants unto tribute to the Turks until that day.

67. And Tancred departed thence, and encamped against the city of Anustria ||, and he took it also with its villages round about ; and he drove away the Turks which were there. And Baldwin took, also, the cities which were round about Tarsus, and he drove out the Turks, which were

* צִילְצִיאָה † בַּאֲלֹדְאַינְוּ. Tarshish. || אָנוּשְׁטְרִיאָה § טָאנְקְרִיד.

in the midst of them ; and Pancratius*, the Armenian, was the chief of his host at that time. And his fame went on and waxed great ; and the men of Edessa† called him, and they made him captain over them, and he was a ruler unto them : and Edessa was a metropolitan city in Aram Naharaim;‡ and its inhabitants were Nazarenes from the days of the disciples of Jesus, and they were servants unto tribute unto the Turks until this day : and he drove away the Turks which were round about ; and the country became his own.

68. While they were at Edessa, all the men of the host passed on, and they took all the places which they passed through. And they drove away the Turks ; and they came unto Antioch, [+] the metropolis, and the beauty of all the country, which is Riblah§. And Antioch changed its *former* name, after the death of Alexander the Great, into Antioch as its name is at this day ;

* פָּאנְגַּרְאַצְיָאוֹ, *Pangratsio*, now corrupted into Paneras.

† אִידִישָׁאָנוֹ.

‡ אָרָם נְהֹרִים, *Aram of the two rivers*, viz. Tigris and Euphrates ; i. e. Mesopotamia.

§ רְבָלָה “*fertilitas* : nomen oppidi ad terminum Palæstinæ septentrionalem in agro Hamathensi, quod Babylonii et irruentes et abeuntes transire solebant. Vestigia ejus prius incognita mihi reperisse video in oppido Rebla octo milliaria ab austro Hamathæ ad Orontem sito cuius mentionem facit. *Buckingham's Travels among the Arab Tribes.*” GESENII LEXICON MANUALE.

and it was the metropolis unto his whole kingdom.

69. And the city is a city with a great wall and high gates and bars, and in the midst of it were two hills ; and on the top of the highest was a strong tower, the river passing between them : and the length thereof was two thousand cubits ; and it was about ten miles from the sea ; and the country round it was as the garden of the Lord, as the land of Egypt : and *Baghi Seyan*^{*}, the Turk, reigned over them at that time ; and he was of the Persian family of the Sultan, who reigned over all these countries with a strong hand ; and when he returned unto his country, he gave all those cities unto his relations and his servants : and he gave unto Solyman, the son of his brother, the city of Nice and its villages round about ; and unto Docat† he gave Damascus with its environs, and unto Assungur‡ his servant he gave Aleppo : and unto this Seyan he gave Antioch, which is Riblah, and a little of the surrounding country ; for the caliph, king of Egypt, reigned unto the land of Aram.

70. And Godfrey and thirty thousand men which were with him besieged this great city for

* אַנְשִׁיאָנוּ *Ansiano*, or, as he is called afterwards, *Ansianus* ; called by the Latin writers *Cassianus* (Hassan ?) and *Cassano* by Tasso. *Gerusalemme Liberata*, Cant. VI. st. 56.

† דָּקָנָה.

‡ אַסְגָּנוֹר.

eight months ; and they could not encompass it all round because it was a great city : and their souls fainted from hunger. And they went out of the city as at other times, and destroyed of the men of the host much people. And it was told unto them, “ Behold a people is come out from Persia ; behold they cover the face of the earth, and they abide over against* you : take counsel quickly.” And the chiefs of the hosts took counsel, and their spirit was troubled : one said, “ Let us all go against them ;” another said, “ No, half of us shall go, and the rest shall stay here as a watch.” The Lord had confounded their lips. And Boemond, prince of Tarentum†, answered and said, “ If we all go, the men of the city will come out, and they will also join our enemies, and fight against us, and they will all come into the city : and if only half of us go, they will come out against the rest, and they will not learn any gleanings‡ of them, and we shall be guilty of *their death* ; is it not better for us to do all we can to enter the city, to take it before they come ? And, if not, know that evil is determined against us. And they said unto him, “ What shall we do further ?” And he said unto them, “ One of the watchmen of the city, a

* Num. xxii. 5. † טארינטינו.

‡ No remnant.

Nazarene like unto us, and in whose hands is a strong tower of the towers of the walls, he said to me, ‘ I will give this city into thy hand, if thou wilt give me the money which thou hast vowed unto me ;’ and now give me this city as an everlasting inheritance, and I will fulfil my words with this man, and we shall enter the city ; but, if not, do ye as it seemeth good in your sight : as for myself, I will go where ye shall go, and will fight until my change come*.’” And when the chiefs heard it, they were very glad, and they said to him, “ Well, let it be according to thy words !” And they gave him the city for an everlasting possession.

71. A Nazarene was in that city, Pyrrhus was his name†. He was great in the eyes of his master, who relied on him and gave him the tower in keeping. And when they‡ heard the report of Boemond, that he was a valiant man, he sent messengers unto him daily, to tell him the nakedness of the city, in order to find favor in his sight. And Boemond sent unto him daily, saying, “ And now see that thou doest what we have spoken together, and we must enter the city.” And Pyrrhus was

* i. e. Death. Job xiv. 14.

† אִמְרָפִירִיאוֹס, this Emerpherius, whom other historians call Pyrrhus, was an Armenian, and bore perhaps also the name of Ephemerius.

‡ The besieged.

glad ; and he gave to understand to his brother from afar*, to see what was in his heart, for he could not do it alone ; and he had not told him anything *of the matter* until this day. And when he saw that it was not in his *brother's* heart to do this great folly and wickedness, he feared to speak unto him ; and he devised evil against him.

72. In that night when a deep sleep fell upon the men, he came into the chamber, and his brother was lying upon the bed ; and he arose against him and slew him, and he covered him with a garment, and sent to fetch Boemond† and his men, who came and stood before the tower. And he cast out a rope through the window, and drew up Boemond first. After this, he brought up the prince of Flanders‡, and Tancred, and the rest of the men which were with them. And they went out thence with him, and they took ten towers of the towers of the wall. And they slew

* By distant allusion.

† The account of the rabbi differs from that given by other historians, who state, that in one of the first chambers the crusaders entered, they found the brother of Pyrrhus asleep ; and that he was their first victim. A return for his services probably not expected by Pyrrhus, who himself narrowly escaped death at their hands ; for the ladder chancing to break, and another not being to be had, they suspected treachery. *Keightley's Crusaders*, vol. I, p. 139.

פִּינְדָּרָה or פִּינְאַרָּה ‡

the Turkish watchmen ; and no man knew of their coming. And they went down unto the gate ; and they broke its doors, and brought in the rest of the soldiers who were without. And it came to pass, when the morning star arose, that they blew the trumpets, and gave the signal, and brought all the soldiers into the city ; and they ran about in the city, and climbed up the wall, and went up into the houses, and came in through the windows as thieves ; and they smote all the inhabitants *whom they met* of the city with the edge of the sword. When the men of the city heard the voice of the multitude, they rose from their beds and sought to flee away. And the uncircumcised met them and slew them with the edge of the sword, and they fell slain to the ground ; and many fled through the gate of the city, and many fled by the way of the water. And their soul was unto them a prey*. Also, *Baghi Seyan*, the governor of the city, fled, and the men of Armenia† met him, and slew him ; their eye had no compassion upon him, for they were sons of whoredom. And they found no provision in the city, though their soul was dry, and nothing was left before the fury of the besieger, but the silver and gold ; and the precious stones and

* i. e. They were glad to escape with their lives.

† אַיְרָמִינִיאָה.

the clothes which they found therein were numberless. And that desolate city was taken in the year four thousand eight hundred and fifty-eight*, on the third day of the fourth month, which is June; and the uncircumcised took up their abode in the year one thousand and ninety eight†.

73. And it came to pass after three days more, that Karbonak, the Turk‡, came, and with him was an exceedingly great host; and he laid siege to the city, and it was invested. And the spirits of the uncircumcised became low in the midst of it, by reason of famine, and for want of every thing; and they ate up the horses, and the asses, and the camels, and the creeping things, and the mice, and all they found. And the men, even the men of renown, their faces became darker than night, so that their appearance was not known in the streets; and every one had his staff in his hand, to stagger along with it; and the poor begged for bread, but there was no one who broke it to them. And the men of the host wandered about; and they destroyed the mills, which were few; and the city was strictly shut up, and distress became very great.

74. And William of Gramatildis §, and the men

* Jewish æra.

† Christian æra.

‡ קַרְבּוֹנָאָק דְתִינּוֹר, others call him Korboga.

§ וּלְיַעֲלֵמו מִנְרָאָמָטִילְדִּישׁ, William of Grandemain.

who followed him, fled from them because of the terrible famine; and they went to Alexandretta, and they put to sea in ships; and they went unto Smyrna*, where they met the emperor of Constantinople, and his host, and four thousand men of the west who were gathered to him, going to deliver the uncircumcised, who were at Antioch, from the hand of the Turks. And the emperor asked him, saying, “ How did the thing fall out ?” and to cover his own shame, he said unto him, “ The city is taken, and most of the soldiers are dead of hunger; but a few of the multitude are left from destruction. And Karbonak†, the king of Persia, and his host besieged them; and the remnant had no strength to stand before them, by reason of famine, and for want of every thing; and there was no hope to be delivered from their hands. And I spake unto them, saying, ‘ Why are ye stiff-necked to stay here? how long shall this city be a stumbling block unto us ?’ but they would not hearken. And we turned and went out from the overthrow to save our lives [יא] from famine. And now, our lord, go not away hence, thou and the people that follow thee, lest thou perish with famine.” And the emperor took counsel and turned back.

75. When‡ Karbonak heard the report of the

* אישטירטי.

‡ קרבונאך.

‡ קרבונאך.

emperor, he approached and fought against the city with all his might, leaving them no rest. And many of the princes thought to flee in the darkness of the night silently, to save their lives from death. And the thing was known to Godfrey, who called them, and rebuked them, and spake to their hearts. And they assembled together; and they sware there to dwell together, and not to draw back, until they had done what they had purposed to do. And it came to pass one day, that they said one to another, “How long will this man be a snare unto us? They have beset the gate, so that nothing can come near, and we are raging with hunger: better was it for them that were slain with the sword! And, now, let us fall upon the camp of Karbonak: if God will let us live, we shall live; and if he will cause us to die, we shall die.” And they girded themselves with valour unto the battle; the feeble said, “I am strong.” And it came to pass on the morning of the twenty-eighth of the month of June, that is the month Tammuz, that they put in array for the battle twelve companies; Boemond, prince of the city was in the last. And it came to pass, when they went out of the city, that the dew descended to lie upon the ground; and the men of the host were glad of it, and it was to them and the horses for a refreshment of the soul; and they went on their way.

76. And when Karbonak heard it, he put also in array his host, and went against them. And three of the companies fell into the Turkish camp, and engaged in battle there; but the rest fell back. And they put themselves in order of battle. And it came to pass, as they were fighting, that the hindmost also fell back; and Boemond was at their head. And the battle spread itself throughout, and the Turks fled before them; they did not stay, for the Lord drove them. And Karbonak fled also, when he saw that evil was determined against his men; and the uncircumcised pursued after them, and they destroyed much people of them, and returned back, for their horses were consuming with hunger. Tancred alone pursued them until sunset, and they returned into the camp; and they found there silver and gold, and precious stones, and clothes, and corn, and bread, and victuals in great abundance, and they refreshed their souls; and the uncircumcised dwelt in that city many days.

77. And the plague was among them, and there died almost all the women; and those that died in that plague were fifty thousand. So may all thine enemies be destroyed, O Lord! And the chiefs of the hosts removed thence, one hither and one thither, every one turned his own way. And they took the cities which were round about *Antioch*, and some of them they made servants

unto tribute, until the day that the land was taken.

78. And the chiefs of the host gathered themselves in the month of September, which is the month Tishri; and they went on their journey to go to Jerusalem; and they took the cities through which they passed; and they came to Tripoli*; and this city was a very great city; and the men thereof went out into the field to fight against them. And they were smitten before the uncircumcised, and turned their necks, and returned unto the city; and they shut its gates; and the uncircumcised besieged the city many days.

79. And the people murmured against the chiefs of the host, because of want of every thing; and they departed from the city, and went on their journey along the borders of the sea; and they came unto Beyrout†. And they removed thence, and went the way of Sidon‡ and Tyre; and they came unto the plain which is by Acre§. Thence they removed, and passed over on the right of the country of Galilee; and they went a three days' journey. And they came into the plain which is as thou comest to Joppa||, and

*טריפולי.

†בָּאֲרוֹת. The ancient Berytus, on the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, and at the foot of Mount Lebanon.

‡צִידְוָן וְצַוָּר.

§עַכּוּ.

||אַיּוֹפִים.

they encamped there. And when they heard that little Rome* was nigh unto them, they sent there the count of Flanders, and with him were about five hundred horsemen; and they came into the city, and behold no man was there; for the inhabitants had removed in the twilight before they came, and left their houses and their goods, for which their eyes had no regard; and their lives were a prey unto them†. And all the soldiers came after them, and they found the houses filled with every good thing; and they dwelt there three days.

80. And when the men of Jerusalem heard it, their heart was troubled and melted away; and they fortified the walls of the city, and placed soldiers in the midst of it; with corn, and bread, and victuals, and weapons of war in abundance; for so had the king of Egypt commanded, who had taken this desolate city from the hands of the Turks with a strong hand in that year; and they fortified it within and without; the night being unto them a time to watch, and the day a time to labour‡.

81. And they took counsel to slay all the

* *רומי הקטנה*, perhaps Romola, or Ramla, the ancient Ramah, or Arimathea.

† This Hebrew phrase means that they escaped alive.

‡ Nehemiah iv. 22. (Heb. 16.)

Nazarenes which were in the city, and to pull down their high places* to the foundation thereof; and to root up their sepulchre, to scatter them to the wind, and to take away from the hearts of the uncircumcised *the desire* of coming into the city. But they feared to do this thing ; for they knew not what the day might bring forth ; and they gave the Nazarenes to be plundered, and drove them and the high priest out from the city. And they dwelt without, and they had their life in their hand† day by day, until the uncircumcised came thither ; and the uncircumcised removed from Ramlah‡, and they came nigh unto the city ; and they saw the city from afar off, and they lifted up their voice, and wept very sore ; and they gave thanks unto their graven image.

82. Now Jerusalem is surrounded by mountains in the land of Benjamin ; the Philistines are to the west of them ; and the Jordan, and the desert eastward ; Bethlehem to the north, and Gibeon southward. Shalem was its name in former times, and they called it Jebus§, after the name of a dweller in the country ; and the name of it therefore they called Jerusalem, as if it were Jebus Salem, until this day||. And in the midst of it were two mountains, and a valley between

* i. e. The cathedrals. † They were in great danger.

‡ רומולָה, Romolah or Ramlah. § יבוס.

|| A very loose etymology.

them : mount Zion to the west, and mount Moriah to the east. This is the place which David bought of Araunah the Jebusite for a price, saying, “ I will not offer burnt offerings unto the Lord of that which cost me nothing*.

83. And it came to pass, in the year four thousand eight hundred and fifty-nine, on the seventh day of the month June, which is the fourth month, that the uncircumcised came to Jerusalem ; and they were about forty thousand souls of men ; and they pitched their tents round about, and laid siege to it ; and thus the city began to be besieged : and in the midst of it were about forty thousand men who drew the sword. And the uncircumcised came near to fight against it on the fifth day ; and they fought against it day by day and they could not prevail against it ; for the men of the city had fortified themselves, and returned them blow for blow. And the chosen men in the camp of the uncircumcised were only twenty thousand footmen, and one thousand five hundred riding upon horses.

84. And on the eleventh day of the month of July, which is the month Ab, they came again nigh unto the city, and they fought against it until noon ; but they could not do anything. And the soul of the uncircumcised became weary ; and

* 2 Sam. xxiv, 24.

they fought no more as at other times; and they turned a little back, for they were afraid of them.

85. And it came to pass at eventide, that the wearied of the uncircumcised girded themselves with strength, and came near the wall, from the fort which they had built of the trees of the forest; and they cast up a trench against the city. And the men of the city hung out great pieces of wood of the cedar of Lebanon from the wall, to protect it from the battering rams; and the uncircumcised who were in the fort, cast down two of them to the ground. And Godfrey, the chief of the host, commanded, and they brought them up into the fort, and they put them upon the wall and the fort, and they made a bridge, and passed over them. And [יב] Godfrey and his brother Eustace* went over first; and they came into the city. And many princes and honourable men, and many a man of the host went after them; and the watchmen of the walls fled before them, and all the city was moved about them. And the uncircumcised went down from the wall, and went to the gate, and they brake open the folding doors, and brought all the men of the host into the city. And they slew all its inhabitants with the edge of the sword, not one was left†.

* אֹסְטָאַקִיאָו.

† i. e. They spared no life which came into their hand.

About ten thousand souls of men fled into the court of the temple. And Tancred pursued them, and slew them with the edge of the sword. So that in the day of the Lord's anger none escaped, none remained, that the Lord might bring his word to fulfilment, which he spake by his servant Moses, saying, "And your enemies which dwell therein shall be desolate upon it." And the city was broken up on the eleventh day of the fourth month, in the third year after the uncircumcised went out from their own country, in the days of the Pope Urban*, in the days of the Emperor Henry IV†, and in the days of Philip, king of Tzaphrath; and it was in their hands eighty-eight years. And they went to see the sepulchre of their Messiah, and they wept sore over it.

86. And it came to pass, after another eight days, that the princes chose Godfrey, duke of Lorraine, and made him king of Jerusalem, and of all its environs round about, and over all the cities, which they had taken; and he was a Frenchman of the city of Boulogne‡, which is upon

* אֹרְבָּאנוּ.

‡ אַינְגָּרִיקוּ.

‡ Frederick von Raumer, who rightly spells him *Gottfried von Bouillon*, calls his father *Eustathius von Boulogne*. See Die Geschichte der Hohenstaufen, vol. I. page 54. "Von allen denen, welche das Kreuz nahmen, verdient zuerst Erwähnung Gottfried, nach dem Stammschlosse seines Hauses von Bouillon genannt. Seine Aeltern waren Eustathius, Graf zu Boulogne, und Ida die Schwester Gottfrieds von Lothringen."

the coast of the sea; and there was his father Eustace, the prince of that country. And the man Godfrey was a valiant hero, a courageous man, of a firm mind, and of a liberal heart, and fair to look upon, and he was ruddy. And he would not take the royal crown upon his head, according to the manner of kings, in the city where his messiah was crucified ; therefore they call him not "King" in the book of Chronicles.

87. And the caliph, the king of Egypt, gathered a great host of all the nations which were round about him. And he sent them unto the land of Aram, to fight against the uncircumcised, and to destroy them from the face of the earth. And they gathered themselves also together ; and their numbers were about twelve hundred horse and nine thousand footmen, and they went out against them. And they put in order a battle there, and the Ishmaelites were smitten before them, and they fled for their lives. And the uncircumcised pursued them, and destroyed much people of them ; and they came unto their tents, which were filled with every thing good ; and they gave them to be plundered.

88. And Hugh, brother of the king of Tzaphath, and many of the princes which were with him, returned unto their homes to Tzaphath in those days ; and many were left in the land of Judah, and Godfrey was king over them.

89. And when Boemond, the prince of Antioch, which is Riblah, and Baldwin, the prince of Edessa, heard it, they went also thither, and with them were about twenty-five thousand footmen. And the Turks went out against them on the road, but they could not do anything. And they proceeded on their journey, and came unto Jerusalem, and they also saw the sepulchre of their graven image, and they dwelt there many days ; when they returned into their country.

90. And it came to pass after Boemond had returned unto his home, that he went speedily with his men to take one of the cities which were near unto him. And the Turks met him suddenly, and they defeated him with the edge of the sword. And Boemond was taken alive, and they led him away with them.

91. In that year, which was the year one thousand one hundred, Godfrey became sick with the sickness of which he died ; and he went the way of all the earth ; and Baldwin, the prince of Edessa, his brother, reigned in his stead. And he was a valiant man, and he fought also against the Turks and the Ishmaelites, and they fled before him ; they turned their backs, and he took their cities from their hands.

92. And when the kings of the west heard what the uncircumcised had done in the east, they took

courage to send again men to war in the east. And they set William of Pictavia*, and Hugh, the brother of the king of Tzaphrath, at their head; and the men removed, and went on their journey. They came to Constantinople, and they passed over the dead. And they came unto the city of Nice, and the emperor sent secretly unto the Turks, saying, “ Go ye out against them in the road, and your sword shall devour flesh.”

93. And it came to pass one day, that the Turks went out against them, and they defeated them with the edge of the sword. And there fell of the uncircumcised on that day about fifty thousand human souls. The rest fled and escaped alive, and they came sorely troubled and smitten unto Tarsus.

94. There died also Hugh, the brother of the king, and the rest went their way and they besieged Tortosa†, and they took it; and there was none to deliver. And they found there, in the cathedral, a green vase‡, which had six sides §, and two handles ||; and the king and the princes gave it unto the men of Genoa, who were with them, when they divided the spoil; and they

* פיקטאביינשי, Poitiers.

טורטושה †.

‡ קערה, scutula, scutella.

§ דופן דפנות, costa, latus, paries.

|| ידות, tenons, handles.

brought it unto Genoa, and they put it into the house of their graven image* to be preserved; and it remains there to this day. And they say it was an emerald; there was not the like found in all the whole world beside: and it is not known unto this day whence it first came. And I, Joseph the priest, have seen it, and it is very beautiful. And they put a garrison in the cities which they had taken; and the king returned unto Jerusalem.

95. And it was told unto the king, saying, "The caliph, the king of Egypt, has sent men to war against the land of Aram, and they are about twenty thousand footmen, and fifteen thousand riding upon horses." And he sent against them two hundred and seventy horse, and twelve thousand footmen. And they set the battle in array against them; and the men of the caliph were smitten before them, and they fled for their lives; and they pursued after them, and they destroyed of them much people. And the chief captain of their host fell in that slaughter.

96. In the year one thousand one hundred and three, when the King Baldwin was at Joppa and Ashkelon, the Ishmaelites came with a strong hand, and with a stretched-out arm. And King

* House of their idols, i. e. their church.

Baldwin heard of it, and went out against them with a great army ; and they set the battle in array there ; and the uncircumcised were smitten, and they turned their neck : and many princes and honourable men died on that day. And King Baldwin fled on foot unto one of the mountains ; and he returned unto the city, and the men of the city were much astonished at him : for they had said, “ He also is fallen like his brother, for the hand of God has touched him.” And he returned and went out into the field ; and he found them* here and there dividing the spoil ; and he slew them with the edge of the sword ; and the rest fled away, and they escaped with their lives.

97. And in the fourth year of his reign, Baldwin went with the large ships of the men of Genoa†, which went unto the coast of Ashkelon‡, and they besieged Acco§ for twenty months ; and they took it : and they laid hand on the prey. And he drove away the Turks which were there.

98. In that year Boemond, prince of Antioch, and Tancred, and Baldwin de Bourg||, and the prince of Edessa, and many other princes took counsel, to go to fight against Caram¶, a city nigh unto

* i. e. the Ishmaelites. † גִּנְוָבָה. ‡ אַשְׁקָלֹן. § קָרָאָם. ¶ חַרְרָן, Harran.

Edessa : and the men went and they besieged it ; and they battered its walls, until they were cast down. [ג']

99. And it came to pass when the men of the city gave it into their hands, that the princes became jealous, saying, “ Who shall enter it first ? ” They were yet speaking, and behold a troop of Turks came from all the east country, and they set themselves in battle array against them. And the uncircumcised fled before them ; and their life was unto them a prey* ; and many of them fell slain to the ground. And the prince of Edessa, and his relation, Joscelin, were taken alive. Only Boemond and Tancred fled for their life ; and their life was unto them a prey† ; and they returned unto Edessa : and the uncircumcised had not had such a slaughter until that day.

100. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that Rodoacus‡, the Turk, came with much people, and with a strong hand, and with a stretched-out arm into the borders of Antioch ; and Tancred came out against them ; and many fell slain to the ground before him : and the rest fled ; and their lives were a prey unto them§ ; and they returned unto their own country.

101. And the Ishmaelites returned again from

* They escaped with their lives.

† They escaped.

‡ רודנאן, perhaps Rodvan.

§ They escaped alive.

the land of Egypt, with a strong hand. And the king went out against them with much people, heavily armed; and the Ishmaelites were smitten: and there fell of them about four thousand men slain to the ground on that day. And when they returned unto their country, the hand of the Lord was upon them to confound them; and the ships were broken by the raging of the sea; and but few were left*.

102. In those days came Boemond, the prince of Antioch, from Tzaphrath; and with him were five thousand horse and forty thousand footmen; and he went on his journey unto Apulia†, and unto the land of Javan‡. And he remembered what the emperor had done unto them, when they came through at the first; and he took the cities which were on the borders of the sea, and gave them up to be plundered. And also the rest of the cities, both those which were nigh and those which were afar off; his eye had no compassion upon them: and they laid hand on the prey, and there was none to deliver from their hand.

103. And when the emperor heard of it, he went out against them with a heavy host and strong hand; but they fought not, for they made

* October, A.D. 1108. Here occurs a considerable chasm in the narrative.

† Πολυΐα, Apulia.

‡ Ἰωνία, Ionia, Greece.

peace between themselves. And the emperor sware to be an assistance to those that went unto the land of Judah and Jerusalem, from that day forward and for ever.

104. Thus the men of the host went on their journey, and Boemond returned back unto the land of Apulia*. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that he thought to return unto the east; but he became sick, and he died: and his son Boemond, which Constantia, the daughter of the king of Tzaphrath, had borne unto him, was left in the principality after him.

105. And it came to pass, after Philip, the king of Tzaphrath, had bought the Biturisins† of the Duke Alpin‡, and after he had enlarged his kingdom above all the kings which were before him, that he consented to let his son Lewis reign during his life. And when the days drew nigh that Philip should die, he went the way of all the earth, in the year one thousand one hundred and six of the coming of their messiah; and his son reigned in his stead.

106. Lewis is the king who was surnamed Le Gros§, the son of Philip, who reigned after him, and did great things; and he was prosperous against the English, and against Henry, the emperor of

* See former note.

+ ביטוריינס, Biturigines.

‡ אלפינו.

§ גראסו.



Ashkenaz*: and for fear of the Emperor Henry, Lewis was called upon by Pope Gelasius, to support him. And after the death of this pope in Tzaphrath, Guy, the cardinal of Vienne†, was made pope in his stead, and his name was called Calixtus the Second; and Lewis was among his assistants; and they brought him unto Rome, and he sat upon the throne of the popes: therefore the Emperor Henry, and Henry, king of England, made war against Lewis, king of Tzaphrath; and he went out against them with a strong hand, and he cast them off from himself. And it came to pass, at the time when he was old, that his first-born son fell from a horse to the ground, and he died; and his father wept over him. And his father Lewis consented, and let his son Lewis reign during his life. And he reigned thirty years; and he went the way of all the earth.

107. And Bertram, count of Toulouse, went in ships of Genoa, unto the land of Aram, and with him was a great host, horsemen and footmen; and he laid siege to Tripoli, and they besieged it by sea and by land. And Baldwin, the king, and his soldiers went there; and they fought against it many days. And when the men of the city saw that there was no strength in their hand, to save it,

* Germany.

וַיָּמָת †

they went out unto them, and they gave the city into their hand, in the year one thousand one hundred and nine; and they and their wives and their children went their way free, and the city was given unto Bertram (on the condition) only that he should be a servant unto King Baldwin, and should always pay tribute. In those days went King Baldwin against Beyrout, and took it with a strong hand ; and they slew the inhabitants of the city with the edge of the sword, in the second month, which is the month Iyar*, in the year one thousand one hundred and eleven, which is the year four thousand eight hundred and seventy-one.

108. In that year, the brother of the king of Norway came into the haven of Joppa, and with him was a great host ; for he also was willing to go and to fight against the Ishmaelites. And the king was glad ; and he gathered also his host, and they went both of them together ; and they encamped against Sidon. And they besieged it by sea and by land ; and they fought against it many days ; and the city was given into their hand on the condition, that the rich and the principal men of the city should go their way, and that the men

* The second month טבת, Ziv or Iyar, begins on the first new moon in May.

of low estate amongst the people should remain to till the ground. And the uncircumcised came into the city, in the tenth month, which is the month Tebeth*, and it was in their hand for many days.

109. When the year came round, Tancred, the governor† of Antioch, died ; and (on his death bed) he set Roger, his kinsman, in his stead. And they said unto him, “ Roger, when Boemond, son of Boemond comes, thou must give him the city ; for unto him belongeth the right of the government.”

110. And in the year one thousand one hundred and thirteen, there came a Turk‡ of the land of Persia, with a very numerous people, and with a strong hand, to fight in the land of Judah. And the king went out against them with soldiers which were with him, and with the nobles of Antioch and Tripoli ; but their host he called not. And Baldwin was smitten before them, and his men fell by the edge of the sword. And they who

* טבת is the fourth civil month, and the tenth sacred. Tebeth has twenty-nine days, and is to be computed from the first new moon of our January.

† מובל, commander in chief or general, from בָּלִיל, perficere, absolvere, comprehendere, completi aliquid generaliter, universaliter, et summarim.

‡ Perhaps *Togtegin*, who is by the Occidentals called *Doldequin*. See Keightley's *Crusaders*, vol. I. p. 288.

died in that slaughter were one thousand two hundred footmen, and thirty horsemen. And the rest fled for their lives. And the Turks destroyed all the places through which they came, and they returned unto their country with gladness,

111. And in the year one thousand one hundred and fifteen came Borshokoino*, the chief captain of the Turks, and with him was a great host; and he went into the country of Antioch, and kindled fire in all those cities; and the people he slew with the edge of the sword. And the prince of Antioch, and the prince of Edessa, went out against them; and they set the battle in array against them. And the Turks were smitten; and they turned their backs, and the uncircumcised pursued after them, and destroyed much people of them. And they went unto their tents, and took much prey, and returned unto their own country.

112. And when King Baldwin saw Jerusalem desolate, without any inhabitant, it grieved him in his heart; and having heard, that in all the cities of Arabia, on the other side of Jordan, there were to be found uncircumcised among the Ishmaelites, [תְּ] he sent and took them, and their wives, and their children, and made them dwell in Jerusalem;

* בורשוכוינו.

and they were there until the day of the captivity of the land.

113. And Baldwin made ready his chariot; and his people he took with him, to take vengeance on the Egyptians; and they went on their journey. And they encamped against the city of Pharamiah*, which is upon the coast of the sea, nigh unto the river Nile; but Tanus† was the name of the city at first. And they besieged it, and they took it; and they laid hand on the prey. And it came to pass when he thought to inherit dwellings which were not his own, that he became sick of that sickness of which he died; and he returned unto Jerusalem, and died in the year one thousand one hundred and eighteen. And Baldwin de Bourg, count of Edessa, a kinsman and one of his family, reigned in his stead; and he was a Frenchman; and it grieved many of the nobles much. And they sent to fetch Eustace, the brother of the king; for unto him belonged the right of the government. And he came in his grief unto Apulia; and when he heard that Baldwin reigned, he thought to return unto his country. And they said unto him, “Why doest thou so? Unto thee belongeth the right of government.” And he said, “Far be it from me to cause a war in the Holy Land; the

* פָּרָמַיָּה, Farama, near the site of Pelusium.

† טָנוּשׁ.

land where my two brethren died, who were better able than I, to increase its peace !” And he returned unto his country.

114. And King Baldwin was a valiant man, fair to look upon, and eschewing evil. And it came to pass, when he reigned, that he gave his city of Edessa unto his kinsman Joscelin, that he might know what went forth from those cities.

115. Then came Gazo*, the chief captain of the Ishmaelitish host, and the king of Damascus, and much people with him, and went unto the borders of Antioch; and they encamped there. And Roger, the governor of the city, with the nobles of Edessa and Tripoli, went out against them; and there set the battle in array, before that the king and his host with him did arrive; and they were smitten before their enemies, and they fell by the edge of the sword; and Roger, the chief of the host, fell also in that battle. And they who died in that slaughter were seven hundred horsemen and three thousand footmen; and of the Ishmaelites, scarcely a man was missing. And it came to pass after some more days, that Gazo sent some of the soldiers which were with him against the king. And Baldwin attacked them, and defeated them with the edge of the sword; and the rest were taken alive.

* גָזֹ.

116. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that the king and his men went unto Antioch ; and Gazo went out against them. And the men of Gazo were smitten ; and there fell of them about four thousand men slain to the ground, besides the captives and the wounded : and the rest fled for their lives.

117. And it came to pass, at the end of two years, that Balak*, the chief captain of the Turkish host, with his army, came unto the borders of Antioch ; but they haunted their steps, that they could not go forward. And King Baldwin gathered the chief captains of his hosts, with his army, and went into the borders of Edessa. And it came to pass, that on his going out from the city of Tellbasher† in safety, Balak came out from an ambush, against him, and took him alive. And he led him away bound in chains, as a slave over the river Euphrates, and put him in prison, in the place where Joscelin, count of Edessa‡, and his friend, were bound ; and they remained there many days. And about fifty men of Armenia, from the country of the count of Edessa, sware unto each other, to bring them out from the prison-house at that time. And they came with subtlety unto the tower where the king and the nobles were bound,

* בָּלָק.

+ טְרַבְּיִשֵּׁל, Turbessel.

‡ אִידְיאָנוּ.

clothed like priests. And they slew the watchmen of the tower with the edge of the sword ; and they took the tower. And they brought the king and his nobles out of the prison-house. And when the Turks heard it, they ran towards the tower, before they went out; but unto the tower they did not go up, for they had shut the doors, and they besieged them. And the king commanded, and Joscelin and his two servants went out secretly, and they passed over the river Euphrates on skins. And they went unto Antioch, and they told what had happened unto them ; and the uncircumcised gathered together a host and horsemen to go to their assistance. They were yet at Antioch, and Balak took the towers by force ; and he took the king, and sent him away with the son of his brother, and with Galirano* unto the city of Cairo, which was Mizraim at first. And they remained there bound with chains many days. And the men of Armenia they chastised with rods ; and he brought them down unto the grave in blood. And when the uncircumcised who came to their assistance heard it, they turned back.

118. And when the king of Egypt heard that Baldwin was taken captive, and that he was brought unto Egypt, he gathered his host, and

came by the way of the sea in ships unto Askelon ; and the report was heard, and the uncircumcised gathered themselves together ; and at their head was Eustace Grimir*, for him had the princes chosen from the day the king was led away captive ; and they went out against them with a strong hand, and found them at Yiblis†, and they set the battle in array against them, and slew them with the edge of the sword, so that about seven thousand Ishmaelites fell slain to the ground in that slaughter, besides the captives which were in great multitudes. And the rest fled, and their life was unto them a prey‡.

119. And it came to pass after some more days, that Eustace died ; and the nobles chose William, from Buris § ; and he was a ruler over them until the king returned.

120. In those days went Dominico Michael, the chief captain of the Venetian host, and with him seventy galleys, unto the sea of Syria, which is Aram. And he pursued after the Egyptian ships, which went the way of their country, when they heard that their hosts had fallen before their enemies in the battle. And he overtook

* גְּרִימֵיר.

† יְבָלִיס.

‡ Escaping with their lives.

§ בּוֹרִים, Wilhelm von Büren.

them near Ashkelon, and destroyed much people of them; and the rest fled and turned their neck, escaping with their lives. And by reason of the slaughter of the Ishmaelites who fell there, the water of the sea was turned into blood, for a distance of two miles; the like to which had not been from the day they became a nation. And the Venetians found again ten ships bearing all sorts of goods from Egypt; and they took them and divided the spoils among themselves. And the chief of their host came unto Jerusalem; and they honoured him; and they took counsel together, and they made a covenant with them about Tyre: and they did what they had planned to do; and they besieged it, and they fought against it many days. And the Ishmaelites gathered themselves together to come to their assistance; but they retained no strength, and they returned unto their own place. And the famine was sore in the city; there was broken unto them the staff of bread in their straitness and affliction; and they could no more hide themselves before the ragings of hunger. And they went out unto the men of the host; and they gave the city into their hand in the year one thousand one hundred and twenty-four.

121. In that year, in the seventh month, was the King Baldwin ransomed, after his captivity of

eighteen months: and he returned to Jerusalem, and the nobles rejoiced with him.

122. When the year came round, Borshikonio*, the chief of the Turkish host came; and fifteen thousand horsemen rode before him, and they passed over the river Euphrates, and came into the borders of [טנ] Antioch, and encamped there. And the king went out against them, and with him were eleven hundred horsemen and two thousand footmen, and he set the battle in array against them. And they fled before him, and turned their neck; and he pursued after them, and defeated them with the edge of the sword. And there fell of them about two thousand men on that day, and of the Nazarenes none were taken in their pits† except twenty-four men.

123. And the king gathered again his host together, and they went unto the borders of Damascus, and destroyed of it the best part; and those that were found were slain with the edge of the sword. And the men of Damascus went out against them, and set themselves in battle array against them, from morning until evening; and the men of Damascus were smitten, and they

* ברשיקוֹנוּ.

† בשחירותם. This may be intended literally, or perhaps, for ambuscades.

turned their neck, for evil was determined against them. And there fell of them about two thousand men on that day slain to the ground ; and of the uncircumcised were missed twenty-four horsemen and eighty footmen.

123. And in the year one thousand one hundred and twenty-seven, came Boemond, the son of Boemond, the prince of Antioch, unto the land of Aram ; and the king went out to meet him ; and they gave him back Antioch. And the king gave him his daughter Alice*, to wife ; and he loved her : and the king returned to his house. Then took Boemond the city of Krasdam†, from the hands of the Turks, by force. And Tyre quaked in those days, and the earth opened her mouth ; and much people died.

124. And the king sent, by the advice of the nobles, to fetch the prince Fulk from Anjou‡. And Fulk came, and the nobles which were with him, unto Acco §, in the month Abib ¶, in the year one thousand one hundred and twenty-nine ; and the king honoured him much, and gave him Melesinda, his eldest daughter, to wife. And he said

* Called Alise or Elisc, Eliza, by Fr. von Raumer.

† קְרָסְדָם, which may be pronounced also Karsadam, or Karasdam.

‡ אַנְגָ'גָוּם, Andegavum. § עַכְוּ, Acre.

¶ חֲדַשׁ אַבִיב, or נִיסְן, answering to part of March and part of April in our calendar, commencing from the new moon in March.

unto him, “By thy word shall all my people be ruled; only be a son of valour.”

125. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that the messengers returned whom the king had sent unto the kings of the west; and with them were many nobles and honourable men, who came willingly to their assistance. And the king rejoiced with them; and their heart became much exalted; and they trusted in their multitude and the strength of their hand. And they went to fight against Damascus; and there died of them much people: and they returned back with shame.

126. And in the year one thousand one hundred and thirty, came Rodoacus, king of Aleppo*, with a numerous people, and with a strong hand, unto the borders of Antioch: and they encamped there. And Boemond, prince of the city, went out against him, before he had gathered much people, and set the battle in array against them. And the men who were with him fled; and the Turks slew him with the edge of the sword: he returned no more unto his house. And the men of Antioch sent unto the king of Jerusalem—for assistance; and he hastened to go thither.

* **חָלִיפּוֹ** *Chalipho*, perhaps intended for Haleb or Aleppo; but which is by others called **חַלְבּוֹן**, and appears afterwards, on page 106 of our translation, to occur under the name of **אַלְאַפְּיָה**. This hazardous conjecture seems to be supported by history.

127. And it came to pass, when he came, that his daughter Alice would not let the king her father enter the city. And he pressed not to enter for a whole day; and his wrath was burning within him: and they spake to her heart*, and he came with anger into the city. And he did with the city and its environs according to his own will; and the Turks fled before him. And Boemond had a daughter whom Alice had borne unto him; and her's was the right of government.

128. And the king returned to Jerusalem, and became sick of the sickness of which he died. And he commanded, and they brought him out unto the house of the priest; and he called all his nobles, and all his servants; and he brought also Fulkt†, his son-in-law, and his daughter, and Baldwin their youngest son; and he gave them the care of the government; and he made a vow to serve his graven image. And his spirit went forth; and he died in the thirteenth year of his reign.

129. And Fulk reigned in his stead in the year one thousand one hundred and thirty-one; and he was seventy years old. In those days came the sultan with a strong hand, and besieged the tower Icon†, which is on the borders of Edessa. And

* They persuaded her. † פולקוש.

‡ איקון, perhaps Iconium.

when the prince Joscelin heard of it, being sick and stricken in years, he called his son Joscelin, and said unto him, “Behold I am old and grey-headed, I can neither go out nor come in. And, now, my son, gird thy loins like a man of valor, and go out unto them into the field, with the men which are with us; only remove from us this peril of death*.” And the young man would not go, for he was afraid; and the wrath of the old man was kindled; and he commanded, and they bare him on poles upon his bed. And he went out with the men of the host against them. And when the sultan heard it, he was afraid and grieved; and he raised the siege of the tower before they came, and went his way.

130. And it came to pass, on their return, that the old man commanded, and they set down the bed from their shoulders on the ground. And he lifted up his eyes unto heaven, and gave thanks unto God, who had wrought that deliverance in his last days, and who had put his fear upon the Turks when he was in the gates of the shadow of death; and his spirit left him, and he died: and his son rose up in his stead.

131. And the lords of Antioch called the King Fulk in the first year of his reign, and he hastened

* Deliver us from this imminent danger.

to go. And Alice would not let him come into the city ; for she lusted to reign over them. And she gave gifts unto the governor of Tripoli, and she inclined him, with the smoothness of her mouth, to be a help unto her. And he went out into the field, with a strong hand, to fight against the king, and they put the battle in array there ; and he fled before the king, and his life was unto him for a prey. And after a few more days they made peace between themselves ; and the king came into the city, and made Reginald ruler over them ; and the city had rest : and he returned unto Jerusalem. And it came to pass, after some more days, that he heard that the Turks were come from the land of Persia, with a strong hand, to overrun the borders of Antioch : and he made ready his chariot, and his people he took with him ; and he hastened to go to meet them. And it came to pass, as they went, that he heard that also Zenghi*, the chief of the Turks, was come with a strong hand, and that he fought against Tripoli : and he turned to meet him. But Zenghi raised the siege before they came, for he was afraid for his life ; and he returned unto his own country. And the king went his way unto Tripoli ; and he found the Turks spread over the

* שְׁנָגִינִי, *Emad-oddin Zenghi*; by Latin writers called Sanguinus, or Sanguineus.

field; and he pitched his tent opposite. And they remained there a few days: but they arose not, nor did they move before him; for they thought in their heart, all the herds shall gather themselves together which come behind us; and we will destroy them from being a nation; and no uncircumcised nor unclean person shall be left. And when the king saw that they moved not from before him, he said, “Is it not this which I desire?” And he strengthened his heart, and fell suddenly upon them; and he slew them with the edge of the sword; and much people fell of them, and the rest fled for their lives.

132. And the king commanded, and the men of Antioch sent to call Raymond of Poitiers, to give him the daughter of Boemond their master, for a wife; and he returned unto Jerusalem. Then they made a conspiracy against the king; and Hugh, the prince of Joppa, was among the conspirators; and he went away from him unto Ashkelon, and made a covenant with the Ishmaelites, the inhabitants of the country. And the king besieged his city of Joppa. And when he heard that Hugh went away from them, to make a covenant with the inhabitants of Ashkelon, they gave the city into his hand. And it came to pass, when the king was in Joppa, that the king of Damascus went and took the city of Piniades*

by force, and he slew all the males of it with the edge of the sword; [ג] and all those who were pleasant to the sight, and who were left, went as captives before the oppressor.

133. When the year came round, came Raymond, and they gave him the daughter of Boemond for a wife; and she was twenty-four years old at that time.

134. In those days the host of Damascus had gone out by companies, in all the borders of Tripoli. And Pontius*, the governor of the city went out against them; and he put himself in battle array against them. And his men fled before the host of Damascus; and he fell also slain to the ground; for the men of Assyria†, who were in Lebanon, were among his adversaries; and many of the men of Tripoli, fell in that battle. And his son Raymond, arose in his stead; and he armed his trained servants, and went up the mount Lebanon; and he avenged the wrongs of his father on those men, and returned unto his country.

135. And when John, the emperor of Constantinople, heard that the daughter of Boemond was given unto Raymond for a wife, and that they had made him the head over the lords of Antioch,

* פונציאו.

† אשור, Assyria.

without telling him the thing, his wrath was kindled. And he made ready his chariot, and took with him his people, and went on his journey unto the border of Antioch, with a strong hand. And he drove out the French from all the places through which he passed, and came unto Antioch, and besieged it. And it was told unto the King Fulk*, and he thought to deliver it: but the counsel of the Lord shall stand.

136. They were yet fighting against Antioch, and Zenghi came into the borders of Tripolis with a strong hand. And he killed every one that was pleasant to the sight; and he kindled a fire in all the cities through which he passed. And it was told unto the king, “Zenghi is come unto Tripolis, and hath made firm his hand;” and the king returned, and passed over, and went against him with a strong hand. And when Zenghi heard it, as he was fighting against Raphania†, he arose and went out against him, and put the battle in array against them; and they fell before him slain to the ground. And the king fled on foot unto a small city which was nigh unto them; and he saved himself there; and all the men of valour fell by the edge of the sword; and the rest were taken alive. And also the prince of Tripolis and

* פולקוש.

† ראנפניה.

Raymond were taken in their pits*; and they bound them with chains.

137. And Zenghi went and besieged the city in which the king was; and he cast up a trench against it; and, when he heard that the nobles of Antioch and Edessa were coming to their assistance, he gave them not time to breathe. And he called to them for peace, saying, "Give ye me the tower, and ye, as well as the king, and the men which were taken at first, shall go away free." And they did so; and the king, and the nobles which were with him, went on their way. Zenghi did not let any thing fail of all his good promise which he had spoken unto them: and they returned unto Jerusalem. And the governor of Antioch returned unto his palace: and the war ceased.

138. In those days Lewis, king of Tzaphrath, who was called Le Gros, closed his day; and he had reigned thirty years; and his son Lewis, reigned in his stead. This is Lewis, the younger, who went with the Emperor Conrad, unto the land of Judah, where they did not achieve any thing; and they returned back with shame.

139. All those days the men of the Emperor John fought against Antioch continually; and also the men of the city filled their hands†, and destroyed of them much people; for the hand of

* Perhaps, ambuscades.

† Took weapons in their hands.

the Lord was upon them, to confound them. And it came to pass, when they became weary of enduring *the siege*, they said, “ How long shall the sword devour?” And they made peace with each other at that time.

140. The conditions of the peace were, that the prince of Antioch should go and cast himself at his feet, and be unto him a servant unto tribute: only that the emperor should give him back Aleppo*, and Cæsarea, and Amas†, and Emesa‡; and that he should give Antioch into the hand of the emperor; and that it should be called after his name§. And that the emperor should give it back unto him, only that on the throne he should be the greater||. And they both made a covenant together; and they sware together, to fulfil all the terms of this covenant. And the emperor came into the city, and they received him with gladness. And he spake to the heart of the governor, and he promised to fight against those cities, and to restore them unto him; and he went from him in peace. And he went unto the country of Cilicia, which is Caramania, and he stayed there until the month Abib¶.

* אלפיאיה.

† אמס.

‡ אימישם.

§ i. e. The City of the Emperor.

|| i. e. That he should be his sovereign and liege lord.

¶ The first sacred month of the Jewish year; corresponding to the end of March and the beginning of April of our year.

141. And it came to pass, at the time when the kings go forth *to battle*, that the emperor went and besieged Cæsarea; and they battered its walls, and cast stones into it, and destroyed much people in the midst of it. And the nobles of Antioch and Edessa set not their hearts to do any thing; and they went after the stubbornness of their heart; and they sat down to eat and to drink all the day: and it grieved the emperor much. And he said, “Thus I am, in the day the drought consumeth me, and the frost by night, and my sleep departeth from mine eyes; and these men play in their tents; have I begotten them, that I should do this thing?” And he took the money which the men of the city had given him, and went from them in peace. And he returned unto Antioch, and dwelt there some days; and he demanded the castle of the city. And this was evil in the sight of the prince and the men which were with him, that the city for which the blood of the French had been spilt like water, should be given into the hands of those proud Yavanim* And the report was heard, and all the city was moved; and they arose like one man, and every one with his destructive weapon in his hand, and their cry went up unto heaven. And they went

* יוֹנִים, *Yavanim*, Ionians, Greeks in general.

in the markets and the streets, and slew the Yavanim which were found there; their eye had no compassion upon them. And the emperor became terrified; and he feared, and was greatly distressed.

142. And he called the prince and the principal men of the city, and spoke in their ears, saying, “I have demanded of you the tower, and the people have murmured and risen against us. And now, as it is evil in your sight, I will return, and the city shall be left in your hand, only on the throne I will be the greater; and my name will be called over you as the sovereign. And go ye out from me, speak ye kindly to the people, and take away from us this *peril of death*; and to-morrow I will go my way.” And the thing was good in their sight: and the city had rest. And it came to pass, on the next morning, that the emperor commanded, and all the soldiers went out from the city, and they pitched their tents on the banks of the river, and they returned unto their country.

143. Then reached Theodoric*, the count of Flanders, Jerusalem; and with him was a very great host: and the uncircumcised rejoiced much. And they went and took a strong tower which was

* Τιαοδορικό.

on the other side of Jordan by force ; and they slew all the males with the edge of the sword.

144. And Zenghi said that he would fight against Damascus. And when Inardo*, the governor of the city, the father-in-law of the king of Damascus, heard it, he made a covenant with the uncircumcised which were at Jerusalem ; and they joined themselves unto him to be unto him for help. And when Zenghi heard it, he was afraid of them ; and he arose from the city which he was besieging, and returned unto his country. [r]

145. And the king and his men went with the host of Damascus ; and they besieged the city Piniades†, for so they agreed between themselves. And the city was given into their hand ; and they gave it unto prince Henry‡, for it was taken from him : and they returned unto their country.

146. And the emperor returned again unto Antioch ; and they would not let him come into the city ; and his wrath was much kindled : and he returned unto Cilicia, saying, “ Let the winter pass, and we will return, and we shall see what their dreams will be ; ” and, it came to pass, when

* אַינָרְדוֹ.

† פִּינְיאָדוֹס, perhaps Pheneados.

‡ הַאִנְרִיכוֹ, stands probably for, Henricus, Henry.

he went out to hunt in the month Abib, with his bow in his hand, that he saw a boar of the forest; and he shot an arrow to slay it, but the arrow stuck in his hand; and he hastened to return unto his tent. And they called the physicians, but they could not save him; and they thought of cutting off his hand, before the poison of the arrow should collect itself in the inside. But he would not, saying, “ If this be so, my death is better than life, for a maimed man is not fit for the government:” and he called his son Manuel, who was a youth, and made him king in his stead; and his spirit departed, and he died. And they returned unto their own country.

147. In those days, when King Fulk dwelt at Acre, he went out as kings go forth to battle; then ran the dogs after a hart, and all the men of valor lifted up their voices, and many fled, for they knew not what was the matter. And the king hastened and turned to see what this noise of the multitude meant, and the horse fell under him; and he fell to the ground; his neck was broken; and they brought him unto the city, and his spirit departed, and he died in the year one thousand one hundred and forty-two. And he had two sons; the name of the one was Baldwin, who was thirteen years old, and the name of the second was Amalric; and Baldwin reigned in his stead. In

that year came Zenghi unto Edessa, and besieged it. For Joscelin, prince of Tellbasher*, which is upon the river Euphrates, went there. And the men of the city were Chaldeans and Armenians ; and they were not experienced in war. And he said, “ This is the time to laugh ; ” and he made war against it round about ; he gave them no rest. And the night was unto them for watching, and the day for labor. And Joscelin, the prince of the city, heard it ; and he gathered soldiers together, and the prince of Antioch, his master, he also called to his help ; and, moreover, unto the king he went, saying, “ The Ishmaelites are come ; and behold they fight against the city, and now let us go and fight against them : ” but the men delayed to come ; and Zenghi fought against the city and took it by force. And they slew the inhabitants of the city with the edge of the sword, there was only a small number left, which fled to the castle ; and their lives were saved.

148. In those days in the year four thousand nine hundred and two, the world became void of rabbinical academies : because of the evil time the righteous Rabbi Joseph, the Levite, in the land of Sphard† was taken away. And after his death, there were two banishments, and two destructions‡

* טורבישילה. † Spain.

‡ Compulsive general baptisms.

upon Israel, in the countries of the west, and they went out from their places; those who were doomed for death unto death; those who were doomed to the sword unto the sword; those who were doomed to famine unto famine; and those who were doomed to captivity unto captivity. And to those who should go out from the community before the sword of the son of Thomorath, the wicked Ishmaelite, who had determined to drive Israel out of the world, when he said, “Come, let us destroy them from being a nation, that the name of Israel may be remembered no more,” he left no name in all his kingdom, and in all the provinces which he had taken in the uttermost part of the world unto the country of Almahadia*. In those days the hand of the King Alphonso, the son of Raymond, was heavy upon the Ishmaelites which were found in Sphard; and his kingdom became firmly established. And he took from the hand of the Ishmaelites Gaberkah†, which was on the highway from the land of Ishmael unto his own country. And the rebellious people in the land of Philistia ‡ passed over the sea unto Sphard;

* Almaharia, אלמָהָרִיא, may be read Almahadia, since in the small print of the original נ and מ scarcely can be distinguished.

† Naberkah, or, if the initial letter is a ג, Gaverkah.

‡ The land of Philistia means here the territory of Carthage, which was formerly a Philistine colony.

afterwards there was no remnant left of Israel from Tangah* unto Almahadia†; and they sought to do so in all the provinces of Ishmael which were in Sphard. And when the Jews heard that the rebellious‡ were come to cast them away from the Lord, the God of Israel, they fled for their lives. And the parents had scarcely compassion upon their children from weakness of hands§. And some of them were bound by the hand of Edom||; and they were sold unto them, to save the people from the land of Ishmael. And some of them fled barefoot; and their children asked for bread, but there was none to break it unto them. And they cried; and their cry went up unto God; and He put it into the heart of the king, Don Alfonso, to set over Gebarkah¶, and over all the king's taxes, Rabbi Judah the noble**, the son of Rabbi Joseph, the son of Ezra. And his forefathers were of the great men of Grenada, and were inheritors of power and dominion over the inhabitants of Jerusalem. And as he was appointed over Gebarkah, and over the great remnant of the captivity, he brought out

* תַּנְגָּה, Tangiers.

+ אַלְמָדְדִיאָה.

‡ Who opposed the Mosaic law: here the Arabian invaders.

§ i. e. On account of their reduced state.

|| i. e. By the Christians inhabiting countries which formerly belonged to the Roman Empire, which the Rabbins style *Edom*.

¶ גַּבְעָרָקָה.

** רַב יְהוּדָה חֶנְשִׁיא.

those who were bound with chains ; and by him all the captives and fugitives passed from the land of Ishmael ; and he sent the oppressed away free ; and the hungry as well as the thirsty found rest in his house and at his table ; and he gave them bread to eat and raiment to put on ; and every feeble one he led away on horses and on mules (to every thing cooked) until they came unto Toledo* (Tolitola† was the name thereof formerly) with honor, and with kindness, and with compassion ; as he was feared and honored, because his name was great among the nations who led them captive. And silver he counted for nought, neither did he lay up gold from the service of the king for himself ; but he worked out the loving-kindness of the Eternal toward Israel‡. And he gave of his bread unto those who were brought low ; and the afflicted exiles he brought into the house ; for God had sent him for a support before these captives.

150. And one of the governors of the cities of the king of Damascus rebelled against his master. And it came to pass, after some days, that he wished to appease the king, that he might restore to him the same city again. And when Baldwin, the king of the uncircumcised, heard thereof, he thought in his heart, “ Now is the time to laugh.

* טולידו.

† טליתולא.

‡ i. e. He accomplished the gracious purposes of the Lord.

Let us go and make a breach therein for ourselves, before it shall return unto the hand of the king." And they arose and went thither. And the Turks went out against them, and fought against them : and they destroyed of them much people ; and the rest fled for their lives.

151. And it came to pass after Edessa was taken, that the kings of the west heard a saying, " The Turks are come into the land of Judah, and into the land of Aram ; and they have destroyed the best part thereof ; and the cities of the uncircumcised they have taken ; and their males they have slain with the edge of the sword." And when Pope Eugenius heard of it, he sent priests unto all the kings of the Gentiles, saying, " The children are come to the birth, and no man layeth it to heart* ; and now, arise ye, and let us go unto the land of Israel ; and let us make a breach therein for ourselves ; and we will destroy the Turks from being a nation ; and their name shall not be remembered." And the priest St. Bernard, of Clairvaux, went from province to province, and from city to city ; and he read in their ears the oppressions and tribulations which had befallen the uncircumcised in the land of Canaan. And it came to pass, when he was in Spires, that

* i. e. The distress reaches the highest point, and there is no hope of deliverance : 2 Kings xix. 3; Is. xxxvii. 3.

the Emperor Conrad took him with both his hands, and drew him up to himself ; for he feared, lest the people of the country, who came to hear his report, should trample upon him ; for they were more than the locusts. And the emperor heard it, and all the people of the country heard it ; and they became willing to go unto Jerusalem.

152. Then the Emperor Conrad and Lewis the king of Tzaphath, assembled themselves together, united in heart to go unto Jerusalem with a strong hand. And they put the cross upon their clothes for a sign ; and they arose to go in the month of May, which is the second month, in the year four thousand nine hundred and six of the creation, [תנ"ה] which is the year one thousand one hundred and forty-six.

153. That year was also unto the house of Jacob a time of sorrow and oppression, of emptiness, desolation, and destruction, and of smiting of the knees together ; and much pain was in all loins, and their faces gathered blackness* ; for the priest Rudolph came unto the land of Ashkenaz to search out, and to mark with the warp and the woof† those which would join themselves to go unto Jerusalem. And he spake falsehood against the Jews,

* Nahum ii. 10.

† תְּמִימָה, a contemptuous expression for the marking of the crusaders, who were distinguished by crosses of cloth.

the remnant which was left from the first persecutions ; and he thought in his heart, “ It is time to act and to speak against the people who have not been forsaken* ; to dissolve, to kill, and to destroy them.” And he went along crying in the name of his god, in order to stir up people to go unto Jerusalem. And in all places he passed through, he stirred up the dogs in them, saying, “ Avenge ye our Lord’s vengeance on his enemies who are before us : after that we shall go†.” And when the Jews heard it, their heart melted away : trembling took hold upon them, pain as of a woman in travail‡. And their spirit rose not in them before the rage of the oppressor who was ready to destroy. And they cried unto the Lord, and said, “ Alas, O Lord ! behold, fifty years, like the years of a jubilee, have not passed by, since our blood was spilt like water, because of the sanctification of Thy great, mighty, and fearful name, in the day of the great slaughter§. If Thou forsake

* Jer. xli. 5.

† The meaning seems to be, First let us root out those of our Lord’s enemies who are among us, and then shall we be prepared successfully to destroy those who possess the sacred territory. *First cast the beam out of thine own eye, and then shalt thou see clearly to remove the mote from the eye of thy brother.* CHARITY begins at home ! This passage might be abusively applied to the Jews.

‡ Ps. xlviii. 6. [Hebrew text, v. 7.]

§ These fifty years were reckoned from the date of the great persecution of the Jews, A. D. 1096.

us for ever, what wilt thou do for Thy great name ? wilt Thou appoint misery a second time ?” And the Lord heard their cry, and remembered his covenant, and turned himself unto them, according to his great loving-kindness. And he sent after this Belial*, the Abbot St. Bernard, from Clairvaux, a city which is in Tzaphrath. And he called also after their manner, saying, “ Come, let us go up unto Zion, to the sepulchre of their Messiah† ; but take thou heed that thou speak to the Jews neither good nor bad ‡; for whoever toucheth them, is like as if he had touched the apple of the eye of Jesus ; for they are his flesh and bone : and my disciple Rudolph has not spoken aright, for of them it is said in the Psalms, ‘ Slay them not, lest my people forget§.’ ”

154. And they hearkened unto his voice, for he was exalted in their eyes ; and they returned from their burning wrath, and ceased to do evil to them as they had devised to do. And he took no ransom of the Jews, for he spake good of Israel

* Worthless fellow.

† Rabbi Joseph takes good care not to say *our* Messiah, although he introduces St. Bernard’s own words ; he chose rather to deviate from grammar by writing משיחם, *their* Messiah, than to use an expression so contradictory to his faith as משיחנו, *our* Messiah, in reference to Christ.

‡ Gen. xxxi. 29.

§ Ps. lix. 11. [Hebrew text, v. 12.]

from his heart. “ I will praise thee, O Lord, that though Thou wast angry with me, thine anger is turned away, and Thou hast comforted me*, to leave unto us a remnant in the land, to preserve of them a great remnant, as it is at this day.” If it had not been for the compassion of the Lord that he had sent this priest, there would have none escaped nor remained of them. Blessed be He who ransometh and delivereth ! Amen.

155. And in other places, the Jews gave their silver and their gold to deliver their lives from destruction ; they withheld nothing from them of all they demanded ; and the Lord delivered them.

156. And it came to pass, in the month Elul†, when the priest Rudolph (may God pursue and drive him out!‡) came unto Cologne, that Rabbi Simon went out from the city, to return unto his city of Treves§ ; for there was his dwelling. And vain fellows met him, of them which loiter about; and they pressed him to be defiled by water; but he hearkened not unto them. And there came a Gentile of a fierce countenance, who regarded not the person of the old man||, and he cut his head from off him, and placed it upon a corner of the

* Isaiah xii. 1.

† אלול Elul, the twelfth civil month, the fifth sacred, nearly coinciding with September.

‡ Gen. iv. 14. § טרברש Tarbers. || Deut. xxviii. 50.

roof; and his carcase was like the dung upon the face of the field, that none gathereth*. And when the Jews heard it, they were grieved; they trembled greatly and bitterly at that time. And they said, “The days of visitation are come; the days of peace come also. Wrath is gone forth; the plague is begun† : our days are fulfilled, for our end is come; we account ourselves to be cut off‡.” And the people wept very sore. And the heads of the congregation went forth and spake unto the principal man§ of the city; and he gave them back the head of the righteous and his corpse; and they buried him in their own sepulchre.

157. In those days they took Minah||, a Jewess, as she went out from Spires, and they cut off her ears and the thumbs of her hands; and they gave her shoulder to bear burdens because of the sanctification of her Creator¶; and Judah was very low in those evil days.

158. And the children of Israel lifted up their eyes, and behold a host that were joined unto Baal** followed after them; and they feared, and

* Jer. ix. 22.

† Num. xvi. 46.

‡ Composed of Hos. ix. 7; Lam. iv. 18; Ezekiel xxxvii. 6.

§ The mayor.

מינה ||

ויתנו שכמה לסקול על קדוש יוצרה ¶

** means here the crusaders, in allusion to Numbers xxv. 5., חנצרים לבעל פעור.

were much distressed. And they lifted up their eyes unto the strong mountains ; and every one asked of his acquaintance, who had a tower or a fort, to dwell in the clefts of the rocks, and in the tops of the rugged cliffs, to hide themselves until the fury should be overpast. And they went out from their houses after the feast of Tabernacles, in the year four thousand nine hundred and seven, and went unto the fortresses, and remained there until the armed men had passed by ; and then they returned unto their own homes. Then the Jews who dwelt at Cologne gave unto the bishop according to all that he asked : and he gave them the fortress of Wolkenburg*, for it is very strong. And the watchmen of the tower he placed without, and no stranger came among them. And they gave their houses and their property unto the bishop as a pledge : and when the thing was known, they pursued no more after them ; also to the remainder of the Jews who fled unto the rest of the fortresses, they said nothing from that day forward. Praised be the name of the Lord for ever ! Elieser, the Levite, wrote all this in his chronicle, as he was in a fort among those that came, who were his

* וולקנבורק. Wilken and Rabe, in the first appendix to the third volume of the *Geschichte der Kreuzzüge*, write Falkenburg : but this can hardly be reconciled with the spelling of the name in the Hebrew original.

kindred, by his mother's family : and he was thirteen years old at that time. Also the Jews who were in all the provinces of the king, saved themselves ; every one escaped unto the house of his acquaintance, into the forts and the towers, and came with his relations and his friends ; and they dwelt there until the fury was overpast.

159. In those days, when the Jews dwelt in the fortress of Wolkenburg*, behold, there came thither a Jew stricken in years, who dwelt in the lowest part of the mountain† ; and he had two sons, the name of the one was Abraham, and the name of the second, Samuel. And their youth‡ carried them up the mountain, to see those that dwelt thereon : and a man, a Belial, met them, and killed them, and went his way. And behold, two young men came down from the mountain, and saw them lying dead ; and they rent their clothes, and went down and told it to the father of the children ; and he wept and mourned over his sons many days. And the matter was searched out, and the murderer was found ; and they gave bribes unto the bishop, and put out his eyes ; and after three days he died. Thus may all thy enemies be destroyed, O Lord !

* This name in the original is here spelt **וּלְצִינְבָּרֶק**, (Wollzogenburg ?) probably a mistake for **וּלְקִינְבָּרֶק**.

† The mountain on which the castle was built.

‡ Youthful curiosity.

160. Also there went out two Jews from Mayence, in the time of harvest ; the name of the one was Isaac, and the name of the second was Judah ; and a Gentile of a fierce countenance rose up against them and killed them. And he went away into ignominy and shame, and returned no more unto his house ; but the governor* seized all that he had.

161. Now there was a mighty man of valor† at Mayence, and his name was Samuel, the son of Isaac ; and as he went out, the enemies rose up against him between Worms ‡ and Mayence ; and they wounded him ; but he disengaged himself from them, and slew three of them who rose up against him before he died. And three Hebrew men who dwelt in the village of Bacharach had fled unto the fort, they, and their wives, and their children ; and they dwelt there many days. And they went down from the fort in the fourth month, on the fifth day of the month. And those who had joined Baal, arose against them, and pressed them sore, saying, “ Come ye with us, and let us be as one people.” But they would not hearken, neither would they be defiled with the proud waters§. And these were their names : Eliakim Nidri, the son of Moses, Abraham, the son of Samuel, and Calonymus, the

* הַשָּׁר, the prince, governor, lord.

† אִישׁ גָּבוֹר חֵיל.

‡ גָּרְמָאִישָׁה, Garmaisa, Wormalia.

§ Baptism.

son of Mordecai. And Calonymus spat upon their image : and they killed him. And the other two had hidden themselves under the beams of the house ; and they pierced them with their swords, and they died. And they were buried in Mayence. Behold, O Lord, and judge it. In those evil days there was no king for judgment in Israel, for [ט] the Emperor Conrad was numbered among the crusaders, and went even unto Jerusalem. Also some Jews were compelled by force, and were defiled with the water ; but they afterwards returned unto the Holy One of Israel, as at the first. And one who was a Jewess, was laid hold on at Aschaffenburg* ; and her name was Gothilda ; and she would not be defiled, and was drowned in the river for the sake of the holiness of her Creator. Remember it unto her, my Lord, for good !

162. In those days all the Jews in Ashkenaz ran hither and thither, one here and one there, unto the rocks and unto the strong holds, to save their lives from death. Only the congregation of Würzburg remained at their house, and set not their hearts to flee away. And it came to pass on the twenty-second day of the twelfth month, in the year four thousand nine hundred and seven, that they brought occasion of slander upon them, in

* אַשְׁפּוֹבָרֶק, Ispoburk, Aschaffenburg.

order to rush and fall upon them : for they said, “ We have found a Gentile* in the river, and ye have killed him, and cast him into the water ; and he is sanctified among us†, and behold he doeth wonders.” And the deluded‡ with the lowest rabble arose, and killed them ; they left none remaining. There was Rabbi Isaac slain upon his book ; and with him were about twenty-one souls. And there was with him a young Hebrew disciple, and they inflicted about twenty wounds upon him ; and he lived another whole year and died. And his sister they brought into the house of error§, and she spat upon their image ; and they wounded and bruised her with stones and with the fist ; and she fainted until there was but one step between her and death. And they wounded|| and injured her with water ; and they stretched her upon a marble stone, and she awoke no more from her sleep. And she lifted not up either her hand or her foot, acting with subtlety until night, that they might believe that her soul had departed, and that she was dead. And it came to pass in the darkness of the night, that a Gentile woman¶ came and carried her unto her house, for her

* גוי, a Gentile means here a Christian.

† Numbers xx. 13. ‡ הטעים, the deluded fanatics.

§ Jewish expression for a church.

|| i. e. They baptized her.

¶ נזירה.

¶ נזירה.

bowels did yearn upon her. And she hid her, that she might save her to bring her back unto her brother. And the rest of the Jews were saved in the houses of their acquaintances : and the next morning they fled unto the fortress of Stolpen*, and dwelt there until the fury was passed. Blessed be the Lord who gave unto them deliverance !

163. And it came to pass on the next morning, that the bishop commanded, and they gathered together all that had died in that slaughter ; and they carried them in waggons, every sound limb, thigh and shoulder†, and the thumbs of their hands, and every thing that was found of them ; and they buried them in his garden. And Rabbi Rachakiah‡ and his wife Judith bought the garden of him ; and it was unto them for the possession of a burying-place unto this day.

164. Also in Bohemia, there were about one hundred and fifty souls of men slain. Also in Soli§ many souls were slain, because they would not change their own glory for one that did not profit. Also in Carinthia ||, the destroyer went upon them suddenly. And they gathered themselves into one court ; and there were two young men, the sons of one man, mighty men of valor : and

* שטולפּון.

רְחָקֵיהּ.

† Ezekiel xxiv. 4.

סּוֹלִי.

קַרְנָעַן.

they made a stand for their lives. And they slew some of their enemies; and they could not do any thing unto them. And it came to pass, as they fought, that they came behind them into the midst of the court, and killed them; and not one was left. The great rabbi also, Rabbi Peter and our Rabbi Jacob of Mido, were slain as they went to bury an elder. See, O Lord, and judge!*

165. And in the third month, on the seventh day of the month, the deluded in Mido, which is in Tzraphath, gathered themselves together. And they came into the house of our Rabbi Jacob†, and took all that he had. And the Book of the Law of our God they tore in pieces before him. And they seized him and brought him into the field, and spake hard things unto him. And they conspired against him to slay him; and they smote him on his head, and said, “Thou art a great man in Israel: therefore we will be avenged of thee for our God; and as thou hast done unto him, so shall it be done unto thee; the recompense shall return upon thy own head.” And his soul had almost dwelt in silence‡, had it not been for the compassion of the Lord which ceases not. And

* מידו. Wilken conjectures that Mido meant Metz; but this seems unlikely.

† This Rabbi Jacob is not the same as the above-mentioned.

‡ וְכַמֵּעַת דָּוְמָה שְׁבָנָה נֶפֶשׁוֹ, i. e. He was nearly killed.

the Lord appointed a great noble, a tiller of the ground ; and he called him Rabbi, and made him to ride upon a horse. And he spake unto the hearts of the deluded, saying, “Leave him to me, I will speak unto his heart; perhaps he will be persuaded : and if not, I will give him back unto you to-morrow.” And they hearkened unto his voice, and he saved him from their hand, because the Lord had compassion upon him: may His name be blessed for ever! Amen. In the rest of the provinces of Tzaphath, we have not heard that they were slain or compelled to be baptized ; only that the people of the Eternal went down to the gates* ; for King Lewis commanded, and proclamation was made throughout the whole kingdom, saying, “Who is the man that is willing to go to war with me unto Jerusalem ? He shall be free from all the debts which he oweth unto the Jews.” And Israel was brought very low.

166. And in England, the Lord delivered them by the hand of King Henry ; for the heart of kings is in the hand of the Lord, and He put it in his heart to deliver them ; and he took not from them, from a thread even to a shoe-latchet†: may the name of the Lord be blessed for ever ! Amen. Also to those who were forced to be baptized,

* i. e. They were exiled. Judges v. ii.

† Gen. xiv. 23.

who were defiled in that year, the Lord gave compassion in the sight of a priest, and he led them unto Tzaphrath, not for money nor for reward ; and they dwelt there until the rage of the vagabonds* against them was appeased : and they returned unto the Lord. Remember it unto him for good, O Lord !

167. And all the united armies went their way ; and the greater part of them died during the journey by sea, of the plague and by the sword, of hunger and of thirst, and of want of every thing : they returned no more unto their homes. And all the Jews who were in Ashkenaz returned unto their desired haven†, and dwelt in their cities and in their houses as at the first, in the year four thousand nine hundred and seven, on the fifteenth day of the fifth month : and they dwell there unto this day.

168. Joseph the priest‡ spake, saying, “ Now will I return to relate what has happened unto the bands which went unto Jerusalem, and all the trouble which befell them in the journey ; that the children of Israel may know that the Lord is a God of vengeance : the God of vengeance shineth forth upon them for evil and not for good, and He is the avenger of his people Israel : for this

* A contemptuous expression for the crusaders.

† Psalm cviii. 7.

‡ The author.

cause will I praise Thee among the heathen, and unto Thy name will I sing."

169. And the Emperor Conrad, and Lewis king of Tzaphrath, and their hosts, removed in the third month, in the year one thousand one hundred and forty-six, to go unto Jerusalem; and every one turned his own way, for the earth could not bear them; they were more in number than the locusts: and they feared lest they should fall out by the way. And they went by the way of Hungary, and came unto the land of Yavan*. And Conrad and his host went first, and arrived at Constantinople. And Emanuel, the emperor of the Yavanim, went out to meet him, and embraced him; and he brought him unto the city, and they dwelt there some days. And they passed over the sea of the Hellespont, and came into the borders of Syria, which is Aram. And their number was seventy thousand horsemen bearing coats of mail, and of footmen a great multitude that could not be numbered.

170. And it was told the sultan of Iconium, saying, "There is a people come out from the west countries; and it covereth the face of the earth: and it is encamped over against thee." And he was afraid and greatly distressed; for

* Greece.

they were more in number than the locusts. And he gathered also his host, and went out against them with much people, and with a strong hand. And the emperor and his host came unto the city of Lycaonia, the mother-city* of the kingdom of Iconium†. And with them were two men whom the emperor had given them to show them the way, to be unto them for eyes. [D] And these men led them through by-ways. And it came to pass in the night, when deep sleep falleth upon man, that both of them fled away; neither was it known wherefore they fled. And no man saw it, for they were weary with the journey, and dispersed over the face of the field. And it came to pass in the morning, that they were not found; and the emperor trembled greatly, and called all his officers, and said unto them, “Either the Emperor Emanuel has deceived us, or the bribe of the Turks has blinded these men, that they have left us; and they will eat their money‡; and now we are entangled in the land: the desert surroundeth us; and there is no provision for the people that follow us. And now we are in a

* Metropolis.

† The rabbi has reversed the matter. Lycaonia was the region, and Iconium its metropolis. The latter is now called Coniah.

‡ Enjoy their reward.

strange country this day ; and God has called us, to kill us with famine : therefore take counsel ; speak ye, for ye are many.”

171. And the chief captains were much grieved ; and they said, “ Let us appoint unto us a head and return ; for the enemy hath sold us.” And some of them said, “ Nay, but we will go our way ; and let the Lord do what is pleasing in his sight !” But the Lord confounded their speech. And they heard that the host of the Turks moved against them ; and they were sore afraid. And it came to pass, as they wandered in the desert, weary and consuming with hunger, that the Turks fell suddenly upon them, and set the battle in array against them. And the uncircumcised fell before them, cast down, and smitten, and slain to the ground ; for the Lord drove them out, and delivered them into the hand of those who sought their lives. And there was not left of all that mighty host, save a tenth part ; for nine parts fell in the pits* of the Turks ; but the emperor was saved, and some of the chief captains who were with him ; and they went towards the city of Nicæa†. And the Turks took the spoil of their enemies which they had left behind them in their haste, in great abundance, so that it could not be numbered ;

* Ambuscades.

נִקְהָה.

and they departed and went their way. * And the sultan was not in all these things, but Paramoni* the chief captain of his host. And the Lord gave by his hand this great deliverance unto the Turks, the like whereof had not been from the day they became a nation, in the ninth month, in the year one thousand one hundred and forty-six: and they gave thanks unto God.

172. And the men whom Emanuel gave them to show them their way, went unto the camp of Lewis, the king of Tzaphrath, who was journeying after them, and said unto him, “ We went with the emperor to show him the way ; and whithersoever he turned he prospered ; and he took also Iconium by force : ” but they lied.

173. And Lewis went on his journey, and passed over the sea of the Hellespont, and made enquiry concerning the emperor’s camp ; and they told him all that had befallen him. And also Frederic, son of the emperor’s brother, the duke of Swabia†, who had fled, hastened unto the king ; and he, also, told him what had happened : and the king trembled much. And he afterwards went on his way unto the place where Conrad had pitched his tent, and told him all that had befallen him : and the king spake unto his heart‡, and

* פָּרָאָמְנוֹן. † דָּאִישׁוּן.

‡ i. e. He spake kindly unto him.

comforted him; and they both went on their journey. And they came unto Ephesus*, a mother-city† in a district of Asia. And it came to pass, while they were there, that Conrad sent the remnant which was left with him by land. And himself went down to the sea in ships, and returned unto Constantinople, either because he was ashamed to go on, on account of the few men who were left with him, or because his soul became weary of the French. And he dwelt there until the month Abib.

174. And Lewis dwelt in Ephesus several days; and he removed and went unto the river Mæander‡: and they saw the camp of the enemy on the other side of the river. And they passed over the river by force, and slew them with the edge of the sword: and the rest fled for their lives. And the French took the captives and the booty, and pursued them unto their tents: and they laid hand on the prey after their heart's desire, on that day.

175. And they rose in the morning, and went on their journey: and they said to the first camp, “Turn and hasten unto the mountain, and we will follow them; for there we will halt.” And the standard-bearer came first unto the top of the

mountain ; and he said, “ Lo, it is yet high day ; neither is it time the camp be gathered together ; ” and he went further on his journey ; and they who were behind knew nothing of this : and they went on slowly, according as the march required. And the camp divided itself ; one part of them went over the mountain, and the other part remained behind ; and the mountain was between them. And the enemy attacked them from before ; and they said, “ This is the time to laugh, for the shadow of the first camp is removed from them, and they are in a strait place, where there is no way to turn either to the right or the left.” And they fell upon the second camp suddenly, and defeated them with the edge of the sword ; and much people of them died. And the king fled, and hastened to go up to the mountain ; and behold, there was no man there. And he went down in the darkness of the night, and came with the rest who went with him, unto the place where they who went first had pitched their tents ; and they had no provision at that time ; and they went about as vagabonds and fugitives, and were entangled in the land : the desert had shut them up. And they came unto Tatalia*, which is upon the sea coast ; and it belonged unto the Emperor

Emanuel. And Lewis, and the chiefs who were with him, went down to the sea in ships; and they came unto the haven of St. Simon*, which is about ten miles from Antioch. And they remained there until all the camp, the remnant which was left, which came by land on the sea coast, was come up.

176. And Raymond and the nobles who were with him went out to meet the King Lewis; they did him honor, and brought him into the city; and he dwelt with him several days. And Raymond said unto the king, “ Let thy servant find favor in thy sight; and let thy people and my people go to war against the cities which are nigh unto us, and stand as thorns in my sides; are they not Aleppo†, Cæsarea, and Iman‡, and the cities which are round about them ?” And the king refused, for he had set his heart to go unto Jerusalem; and the wrath of Raymond was kindled; and he devised mischief against him. And it was made known unto the king: and he suddenly forsook the counsel that they should go, and went out from the city secretly, and went his way.

177. And the Emperor Conrad, and the rest who were with him, went down to the sea into

ships, which the Emperor Emanuel had prepared for him, in the month Abib ; and they went unto the haven of Acre, and landed and went unto Jerusalem. And it was told unto the King Baldwin : “Behold, Lewis, the king of Tzaphrath, also, is nigh unto thee.” And he commanded, and the high priest and all the people of the country went out to meet him ; and they brought him unto Jerusalem ; and the king and the nobles honored him, and showed him what his soul desired ; and he dwelt with them several days. And it came to pass, after some more days, that the emperor and these two kings assembled together while they were near, saying, “What shall we do to honor this kingdom ?” And they said with one voice, “It will be good for us to fight against Damascus ; and we will make for us a breach therein :” And the thing was pleasing in their sight. And the command was given at that time, saying, “Prepare yourselves for the appointed day ; and then we will go.”

178. And the emperor and these two kings went out, and the men who followed them, in the third month, in the year one thousand one hundred and forty-seven. And they passed over mount [LB] Lebanon, which is between Cæsarea and Damascus, and went down into the plain of Damascus, and approached the city. And round about

the city are gardens and parks* in abundance, for a distance of full five miles towards mount Lebanon ; and a wall of lime is round about them. And King Baldwin came first ; and they took the parks, and also passed over the river by force, and pitched their tents round about the city. And the men of the city were greatly afraid, and shut up the markets and the streets which were on the side of the uncircumcised, saying, “ When the uncircumcised come into the city, we shall save our lives before they can pass ; and *our life* will be unto us a prey”†.

179. And it came to pass, as they saw that the evil was determined against them, and that there was no strength in their hand to stand before that host, they spake in the ears of the chief captains of the host, who had had the first seats in the kingdom from the day in which they came into the country ; and they promised to give them silver and gold in abundance if they would save their lives from death ; and they hearkened unto them ; for a gift blindeth the eyes of the wise. And they said unto the emperor, and the kings, and the nobles who were with them, “ It is better for us to go out from these parks ; let us go unto the

* פְּרַדְסִים, παράδεισοι, the Persian term for parks and pleasure grounds.

† We shall escape with our lives.

other side of the city ; and God will give it into our hands ; for it is feeble." And the thing seemed good in their eyes ; and they left the places which they had purchased with the blood of the slain, and encamped on the other side of the city ; and there was no water for the people, and all the people murmured saying, " With subtlety they have brought us out thence, to kill all this people by famine and thirst, and by want of every thing, before we come into the city." And they said, " Let us make a head and return ; for the famine is sore." And they knew no more what to do, nor whence food should come to them. And they returned with shame and scorn unto Jerusalem. And the chief captains of the uncircumcised who were in the east country, were in the eyes of these kings an abhorrence ; their souls became weary of them, for they were sons of whoredom*. And so it was found, that the silver, which the men of the city gave as a bribe, was dross, which does not profit for the work ; for they dealt cunningly with the uncircumcised.

180. And when Conrad saw that all this was of the Lord to destroy and confound them, he went down to the sea into ships, and returned unto his west country with shame.

* i. e. The Pullani, or the descendants of the first crusaders, were a despicable order of men.

181. And Lewis and his wife dwelt in Jerusalem a whole year, and returned unto their country: from that day and afterwards, the hand of the uncircumcised sank lower and lower in the east country, until the Lord cast them out thence. And the land spewed them out; and the Ishmaelites girded themselves with strength, and moved not before them as at first, but fought against them with force: the feeble said, “I am strong.”

182. And the ships of the Yavanim* met King Lewis the younger†, as he returned unto Tzaphrath; and they seized him, and led him through the way of their country, for they thought to deliver him unto the emperor, their king; and he was besieging Corsolio‡ at that time. They were yet on the road; and behold, Gregory, the admiral of the ships, came; and he kindled fire in all the circuits of Yavan, for he had heard the report; and he gave them to be plundered. And he reached Constantinople. And they shot golden arrows into the emperor's palace; and he burned all the houses which were without the city; and of the fruits in the emperor's gardens they took by force. And it came to pass as he returned, that he met the ships of the Yavanim, and took them;

* Greeks or Ionians.

יוניארי †

קירושליאו or קורושליאו ‡

and he took also the king his master from their hand. And the Yavanim went their way, for so had the king commanded ; and he returned unto Tzaphrath. And it came to pass after the king had returned, that he divorced his wife, for he was jealous of her ; and she went from him, and became the wife of Henry, the duke of Normandy. And in his old age he begat a son, and called his name Philip, and by surname Deodatus*, for he was a wonder in their sight : and others called him Augustus : and he was an oppressor of the Jews from his birth, from the womb, and from the conception.

183. And it came to pass, after those kings had returned unto their country, that Nureddin†, the son of the King Zenghi, came into the borders of Antioch with a numerous host and with a strong hand, in the year one thousand one hundred and forty-eight. And this was told unto Raymond ; and he went out against them with the people who were found with him. And he was afraid and sadly distressed, for they were more than his men ; and he set the battle in array against them ; and the men which were with him fled, and turned their backs, and Raymond alone was left ; and his enemies slew him with the edge of the sword ; and many nobles fell in that war. And Nureddin

* Rabbi Joseph observes that this name is of the same import as Nathaniel, i. e. God's gift, or given by God.

+ נוראנדינו, Nurandino.

commanded, and they took off his head and his arms from him; and he sent him unto the caliph of Baldak*, and unto the rest of the Turkish princes to mock him. Also the prince of Edessa fell into their pits as he fled away, and they led him off unto Aleppo, which is Haleb†; and they embittered his life, and he died in the prison-house. And his wife arose after him, and she fortified the cities which were left unto them, to save them from the hand of the plunderers; for she was a valiant woman.

184. And when the emperor of Constantinople heard the desolations of that country, it grieved him, for it was counted his country; and he sent the chief of his host with a strong hand, to be an assistance unto them. And he spake kindly to the woman, and promised to give her and her children an allowance year by year, and to deliver her from the hand of the Turks; only that she should give him the fortresses which she had, that he might put soldiers into the midst of them; and he would bring back unto her the cities which they had taken from her by force. And the thing seemed good in her sight, and in the sight of King Baldwin; and they did so.

185. And the king took the woman and her children, and all the Frenchmen who desired to

* באלדאק † אל אלפיאה דיא חלב.

go with them, and he returned unto Jerusalem. And Antioch was left in the hand of the Yavanim at that time.

186. And when Nureddin saw that the people of the west were gone, and that it was not in the power of their hands to retain strength any longer, he returned when the year came round ; and he took all that country, as a man would take the tip of the ear* : there was no city which was too strong for him ; and it remaineth in their hand until this day. And the land was wide ; it could well maintain five thousand horsemen and more. In that year, which is the year one thousand one hundred and fifty, the people which is called Assassins† killed their master, the prince of Tripolis, and brought him down to the grave in blood.

187. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that two Turks, the sons of one man, came with a strong hand and besieged Jerusalem ; for the country belonged to them before the uncircumcised came, and it was counted their country. And they pitched their tents upon the mount of Olives, and the city became in a state of siege. And the men of the city went out and fell upon them suddenly ; and the Turks were smitten

* בקחת איש ביד און, is here expressive of the ease with which this enterprise was accomplished. A similar phrase occurs in Amos iii. 12, though applied in a different sense.

† אשינני.

before them, and turned their backs ; and they smote and routed them unto Jordan. And there fell of them on that day about five thousand men ; and the rest returned unto their country.

188. And the Emperor Conrad died in the year one thousand one hundred and fifty-three. And Frederic Barbarossa, the son of his brother the Duke of Suabia, [כב] reigned in his stead by force, against the will of some of the princes ; and his government was firmly established. And he came into Italy in the year one thousand one hundred and fifty-six, and besieged Milan seven years. And he took it by force, and utterly destroyed it ; and all its houses and its towers he cast down to the ground. And he returned unto his own country.

189. And in the year one thousand one hundred and fifty-seven, the King Baldwin gathered the soldiers who were found with him, and went to fight against Ashkelon, which is upon the borders of the sea. And he kindled fire in the gardens and in the parks which were round about it. And he turned his face toward the city. And the city was a city strongly fortified, in the shape of a crescent, and the water was like a wall unto it. And they fought against it during five months, day by day, and the city was besieged. And ships of Egypt came to its assistance, and they were unto them a refreshing for the soul ; for their

soul was dried up in the war by siege and straitness. They retained no more strength. They were yet besieging Ashkelon ; and Nureddin came with a numerous people and with a strong hand. And he fought against Damascus, for he heard that Inardo* their shepherd-king was dead, and he took it. For the men of the city became weary of their king, because he was simple and lazy, unfit for government. And he fled away from them, and went eastward. And Nureddin removed thence, and besieged the city of Piniades†, for he thought, “The uncircumcised will hear of it ; and they will return from Ashkelon.” But he could not do any thing, for the city he did not take ; and the uncircumcised did not withdraw their hands. And they fought against it as at other times ; and there died, both within and without, much people daily. And it came to pass one day, that forty men came into the midst of the city by digging‡, and slew them like one man. And it grieved the uncircumcised much ; and they set their heart upon going out from it. And it came to pass one day, that the men of the city went out against them ; and they set the battle in array against them. And they were smitten before the uncircumcised with the edge of the sword ;

* במחתרת † פינייאדים ‡ אינארדו. by digging or mining.

and the rest returned unto the city, and their life was unto them a prey; and there was not one house in the city where there was not weeping and mourning ; and all the city was moved, for there was but a small number left. And one said unto his neighbour, “ How long shall this city be a snare of our souls ? Now let us go out unto them, and let us ask them for peace, that the rest may be saved from death.” And they sent messengers unto the king, and made a covenant with him, and gave the city unto his hand ; and they, and their wives, and their children, went away free. And the king came into the city ; and he put a garrison into the midst of it, and returned unto Jerusalem.

190. In those days, Reginald of Castile, who was of a low family, took the wife of the deceased Raymond, the prince of Antioch, to wife. And many of the nobles had sought to take her ; but of all of them her soul became weary, and she chose Reginald, for he was right in her eyes. And it came to pass, when he saw that the thing seemed unfit in the eyes of the great priest, the patriarch, that his wrath was kindled against him. And he mocked him ; and he was old and sick ; and he took him and put honey upon his head, and set him in the sun on a summer’s day, from morning until evening ; and all that he had he took.

And it came to pass, when he was ashamed, that he went out from the city; and he lifted up his feet and went up to Jerusalem.

191. Then went Reginald, the prince of Antioch, unto the isle of Cyprus, and he took it by force from the hand of the emperor of Constantinople; and he took all their fortified cities and their villages, and he gave them to be plundered. He laid hands also on the high places* of the monks and of the nuns; his eye had not compassion upon them. And to the silver and gold which he took of them was no number†; and he returned unto his place and his country.

192. And Baldwin, the fifth king‡, went, in the year one thousand one hundred and fifty-two, to build a city which the Turks had burncd. And when he returned unto Jerusalem, the Turks hunted his steps that he could not go§; and they laid an ambush, and he knew it not. And they fell upon him suddenly, and his men fled as before the sword. And he fled also upon a swift horse, and his life was unto him a prey; and many were taken, and many were slain by the edge of the sword on that day; and the chief of the host was

* Monasteries.

† Comp. 1 Chron. xxii. 16.

‡ The succession of the kings of Jerusalem was — Godfrey, Baldwin I, Baldwin II, Fulk, Baldwin III.

§ Lam. iv. 18.

taken alive: and they led them away with them.

193. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that Nureddin, the oppressor of the uncircumcised, came with a strong hand, and encamped against the city of Spelunca*, that is, being interpreted, the cave, and besieged it. And it was told unto the king, and he went out against him. And when Nureddin heard it, he went up from the city. And he came against the king, and put the battle in array against him; and the host of Nureddin was smitten before the uncircumcised; and they turned their neck, and the rest returned unto their country.

194. In that year, the emperor of Constantinople came with a strong hand into the land of Cilicia, to deliver it from the hand of Toro†, the prince of the Armenians, who had taken it from his hand; and he drove away the Yavanim from that district. And Reginald, the prince of Antioch, feared, and his soul was embittered, because of that which he had done in Cyprus; and he purposed in his heart to go and cast himself down before the emperor; for he said, “I will appease him by my words; perhaps he will accept my person.” And he went by the advice of his friends

* אִישְׁפֵילּוֹנָה.

טוֹרוֹ †

unto the emperor, when he was in Cilicia, barefoot, and clothed with linen clothes unto the half of his arms. And he had a rope around his throat, and a knife in his hand, and he gave it to the emperor before the eyes of the sun ; and he fell before him at his feet. And he said, “ I have sinned against my lord, and will now do as it seemeth good in thy sight.” And he remained there until their souls became weary. And this has been unto the French a shame, a proverb, and a by-word*, until this day.

195. And when Baldwin heard that the emperor was come, he went to meet him ; and the emperor received him with gladness, and Baldwin made his peace with the emperor, and with the prince of Armenia ; and the war ceased. And he gave precious things unto the king ; and he returned unto Jerusalem : and the emperor returned unto his country.

196. And in the year one thousand one hundred and sixty, Reginald, the prince of Antioch, went into the country of Edessa, to plunder and spoil. And they took all that their heart desired, and destroyed the best part thereof. And the inhabitants of that country gathered themselves, and pursued after them ; and the men of Reginald were smitten before them, and fled for their

* Deut. xxviii. 37.

lives. And they smote and routed them; and took Reginald alive, and led him away bound with chains unto Aleppo, which is Haleb, with shame. Then the king went unto Antioch, for he was called by the men of the city; and he spake comfortably to them, and set the great priest, the patriarch, as a shepherd* over them; and he returned unto his land. And it came to pass, after some days, that the king returned unto Antioch; and he became sick; and he commanded, and they brought him unto Beyrouth, and he called his nobles and his priests; and he confessed; and his spirit departed, and he died in the year one thousand one hundred and sixty-two, on the twenty-fifth day of the twelfth month, which is the month Adar. For they had caused him to drink deadly poison; the rest of which they gave in bread to a little dog, and he died.

197. And his son Amalric† reigned in his stead; and this Amalric was the sixth king. He loved money more than any who reigned before him, was learned in books, and a warlike man. And the Egyptians revolted against him; they would not give the tribute according as they did in the days of his father: and he gathered his host and went down unto Egypt. [כג] And the governor of Egypt went out against him with a

* Ruler or governor.

אלמִירִיקו †

strong hand ; and they put the battle in array against him. And the Egyptians were smitten before him and turned their backs ; and they opened the channels of the water, and the Nile flowed out and covered the face of the earth. And Amalric could go no farther, for the waters prevailed ; and he returned unto his country in the first year of his reign.

198. And it came to pass, after some days, that Nureddin, the prince of Damascus, gathered his horsemen and his host ; and he sent Shirkuh*, the chief of his host, unto Egypt, for he was invited by one of the nobles of the city. And when the sultan, the king of Egypt, heard it, he became afraid and sore distressed. And he sent messengers unto Amalric, saying, “Help me from the mouth of the Turks, and I will give tribute according as thou shalt lay on me ; and I will be unto thee one who bringeth presents always.” And the king answered, “I will do according as you say unto me ; but let not your king deal deceitfully with me any more†.” They were yet with the king, and Shirkuh came into Egypt, and the sultan came out against them ; and they put the battle in array ; and the Egyptians were smitten, and the sultan fled before him. And it came to

* שירקון.

† Exod. viii. 29.

pass, as he fled, that his servants slew him, and he died; and they made Shoar* king in his stead. And Shirkuh turned, and besieged Balbis†, the city, and took it; and the Sultan Shoar became afraid; and he feared and was sore distressed. And he sent also messengers unto Amalric, and they both made a covenant. And Amalric gathered his host and went also down into Egypt, in the second year of his reign; and he encamped against Balbis, with the men of the sultan: and they besieged it. And it came to pass, after some days, that Shirkuh gave the city into their hand; and they returned unto their country.

199. In those days, the old Hugh, and Godfrey, and with them many soldiers, went from Ashkenaz unto the east country; for they also offered themselves willingly to go. And it came to pass, when they reached Tripolis, that they fell suddenly upon the camp of Nureddin, and slew them with the edge of the sword: and they destroyed of them much people. And the rest turned their backs, and fled for their lives; and it grieved Nureddin much. And it came to pass, after some days, that he gathered soldiers and besieged a small city which belonged to the uncircumcised, nigh unto Antioch. And when

* שואר.

† sometimes spelt بالבאס, بالבאס.

the chiefs of the uncircumcised heard of it, their heart began to tremble; and they gathered their hosts: and at their head was Boemond, the prince of Antioch, and the prince of Tripolis, and Calonymus*, the deputy† of the Emperor Constantine, who was in the land of Cilicia, and Toros‡, the prince of the Armenians; four kings against one. And they went out to meet him, and they put the battle in array against him; and the uncircumcised were smitten and fell before him slain to the ground. And the princes of Antioch and Tripolis, and the deputy of the emperor, and the old Hugh, and other princes with them, were taken alive. And the rest fled away; and their life was a prey unto them§: and it was a shame unto the uncircumcised. And Nureddin returned; and he besieged the city, and took it in the fifth month, in the year one thousand one hundred and sixty-four: in that year, while Amalric was still in Egypt, Nureddin went and besieged the city Bilanash||, which belonged unto the uncircumcised, and took it.

200. And when the King Amalric heard it, he gave no heed even to this; and he went unto Antioch, for he was called by the men of the city.

* קָאַלְעָמָנוּס ; perhaps a typographical error in the original for קָאַלְעָנוּס. † 1 Kings, xxii. 48. ‡ טָוֹרֶשׁ . || בִּילָּאָנָּאָשׁ .

§ i. e. They escaped with their lives.

בִּילָּאָנָּאָשׁ .

And he spake unto their heart, and helped them ; and they ransomed the prince from the hand of the Ishmaelites for a great weight of silver ; and he returned unto his house in that year.

201. And it came to pass when the year was ended, that Nureddin and his host went unto Egypt. And when Amalric heard it, he also gathered his host, and passed through the desert, and went against him unto Egypt. And when Shoar, the sultan, heard of it, he was glad in his heart, and by the advice of the caliph promised to give forty thousand pieces of gold unto Amalric, after he should have driven away the host of Shirkuh, the chief captain of Nured-din's host, from all the borders of Egypt. And Amalric went out from the city and went against Shirkuh ; and he pitched his tent opposite. And it came to pass on the next morning, that Shir-kuh went out to fight ; and with him twelve thousand men riding upon horses, clad in coats of mail. And Amalric also went out ; and with him were about four thousand horsemen, besides the Egyptians who were not exercised to war ; and they put the battle in array there. And the men of Shirkuh were smitten, and turned their backs ; and they pursued after them, and destroyed of them much people : and the rest fled for their lives. And also the Prince Hugh, who was in

the second division, went out, and arrayed this army against the battle array of Saladin, the son of Shirkuh's brother; and he was smitten and all his people; and they turned their back, and the Prince Hugh, the prince of Cæsarea, and many of his men who were with him were taken alive. And there fell of the Ishmaelites, on that day, fifteen hundred men; and of the uncircumcised there died but one hundred. And Shirkuh fled, and went unto Alexandria; and the inhabitants of the city gave it into his hand: and he put a garrison into the midst of it.

202. And Alexandria was a large city; the beauty of all the land of Egypt. And it was five miles from the Nile; the wilderness is to the west, and Libya is to the east of it*; and Alexander had built it; and he called it after his own name. And it has a sea-haven divided into two; and a small neck of land is in the middle; and Julius Cæsar built a high tower upon its point, called Pharos, until this day. And the merchants bring thither spices and precious stones in abundance, from Hodu†, and from Cush‡, and from Sheba§, and from Elam ||, and from Shinar¶,

* Rabbi Joseph should have said, *to the south.*

† i. e. The East Indies. ‡ Ethiopia. § Arabia Felix.

|| ים עילם, a province of Persia. ¶ Chaldæa.

and from Hamah*, and from the isles of the sea ; they come by the way of the sea of reeds†, unto the city of Ardiph‡, which is on the uttermost part of the land of Egypt ; and thence by the way of the Nile, unto Alexandria. Also from the west countries they go thither by the way of the sea. It is the beauty and the market§ for goods unto all the countries.

203. And when Amalric heard of it, he hastened to go thither ; and he encamped against the city. And he distressed it. And the city was besieged ; and the famine was sore, for they came no more into it as yesterday and the day before. And they fought against it day by day ; and much people of them died. And Saladin feared lest the men of the city should rise against him, because of the rage of the famine. And he wrote unto his uncle Shirkuh, all that had happened unto him ; and he was fighting against a city on the uttermost part of the borders of Egypt at that time. And when

* חמת Hamath, a town of Syria, on the river Orontes. Ezek. xlvi. 16; Numb. xiii. 21, xxxiv. 8; Amos vi. 2. Hamath is called by the Greeks *Epiphania*; but the Arabs call it still by its ancient name. Abulfeda, who was a prince of Hamah, describes it, *Tab. Syriæ*, p. 108, 109. Comp. *Relandi Palestina*, p. 109, et seq. *Burckhardt's Travels*; and *Gesenii Lexicon Manuale*.

† The Red Sea.

‡ אַרְדִּיף.

§ i. e. An emporium.

Shirkuh heard of it, he went away from the city and came unto Byblah.* And he thought to fight against the cities of the uncircumcised, and to take away Amalric from that place; but his heart shrunk within him, for he had heard that they were fortified. And when there was another spirit with him, he called for peace, through Hugh of Cæsarea who was in his hand. And they hearkened unto his voice; and he gave the city into their hand; and the captives of the uncircumcised and the Ishmaelites they sent away free; and every one returned unto his possession on that day. And Shirkuh went out from all the borders of Egypt; and Amalric and all his host returned unto Jerusalem in the fourth year of his reign, which is the year one thousand one hundred and sixty-five.

204. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that the Emperor Constantine sent messengers unto Amalric, saying, “Let us go down unto Egypt, and vex† it; and we will make a breach therein for us: for the [כד] Lord has given this kingdom into the hands of hasty‡ men.” And the thing seemed good in the sight

* **בבלה**, probably Byblus on the Nile, at the commencement of the Delta.

† Is. vii. 6.

‡ פוחזים.

of the king, and he said unto them, “Let your king send at the appointed time, the captain of his host; and we will go: I will not turn either to the right or to the left, for he is my brother.” And it came to pass, at the time when kings go forth to battle, that Amalric gathered his host, and went down unto Egypt. And he besieged Pelusium, and took it; and its people he slew with the edge of the sword. And when the Sultan Shoar heard of it, he was distressed, for he wist not what the day might bring forth. And he sent messengers unto Nureddin, saying, “Bring us help, because of our oppression: for the children are come to the birth, and there is not strength to bring forth.” And Nureddin did according to all which they had asked: and he called Shirkuh, the chief of his host, and sent him unto Egypt, with a strong hand.

205. And Amalric arose after he had slain the inhabitants of Pelusium, and went unto Egypt, and besieged it. And the sultan thought in his heart, “This uncircumcised is a lover of money: I will feed him with money; perhaps I may prevail to make him depart from me.” And he sent messengers unto him, saying, “What sin have I done, that thou persecutest me: and now arise; go away from me, and I will give thee twenty times

two hundred thousand pieces of gold ; only fight no more against me." And the thing seemed good in his eyes ; and they gave him one hundred thousand, at that time ; and he went away from the city, and pitched his tent in the garden of balsam* which is the king's garden. And when he heard that Shirkuh† was come with a strong hand he went out against him. And it was told unto Amalric, saying, " Shirkuh has passed over the river Nile, and he also cometh against thee with a strong hand." And his heart was moved, and the heart of his people ; and there arose no spirit in him to go, for he was afraid for his life : and he lifted up his feet and returned unto Jerusalem. And Shirkuh came near, and said, " Surely now I have found the day which I have desired since I went forth from the borders of Egypt until now." And he commanded, and his men killed Shoar, the sultan, who was not guarded against them. And Shirkuh came unto the caliph within, and bowed himself to the ground before him ; and the caliph made him sultan instead of Shoar, who died.

206. And Shirkuh died also in that year ; and they made Saladin sultan in his stead. And Saladin was a mighty man of valor, a counsellor, the wisest of politicians, and of sound knowledge.

* בֶּן הַאֲפָרְסָמוֹן.

+ שִׁירָקָה.

And money he did not reckon for any thing with the soldiers ; he was compassionate towards the captives ; of a firm resolution ; and violated not his word*. And he came also to bow before his master, the caliph, after their manner ; and he slew him with an axe which he had in his hand ; and all his family he brought down unto the grave in blood. And Saladin was sultan and caliph on that day. And Saladin divided all the treasures of the caliph among the soldiers, who were with him ; and his fame was noised throughout all the country. And the uncircumcised were sore afraid, and sent for assistance unto the kings of the west ; and they did nothing at that time.

207. And the emperor rememberd his covenant which he had made with Amalric ; and he sent in the seventh month, in the year one thousand one hundred and sixty-nine, one hundred and fifty gallies, and seventy-two large ships, bearing soldiers, and horses, and weapons of war, in abundance, unto Syria, which is the land of Aram, by the hand of Maldukas†, the chief captain of his host, who was near to him, being of his kindred ; and Alexander of Conversano‡, in Apulia §, his companion. And when Amalric heard it, he gathered also soldiers, horsemen

* לא יהל דברו, non profanavit verbum suum.

† מאלדוקאש. § מקונווירשאנו.

and footmen, from the land of Yavan* and from the west, in multitudes, and he went unto Ashkelon ; and all the hosts of Damietta went and besieged it ; and they delayed fighting for three days. And there came Turks from Egypt, and they went into it before their eyes ; and they put soldiers into the midst of it, and provision according to their heart's desire ; and the night was unto them for watching, and the day for labor. And the uncircumcised fought against it, and battered its walls ; also the men of the city filled their hand† at that time. And the heart of the uncircumcised melted away ; and they fought not as at other times : sometimes they would come near and prevail ; and sometimes they would come near, and the Turks would prevail. And the men of the city fell upon the camp of the Yavanim time after time‡, and destroyed of them much people. And they brought soldiers day by day into the midst of the city ; and the uncircumcised feared much. And they said, “ It is better for us to return unto our country than to die of hunger in the land of Egypt ; for they had no provision, and the famine was sore.” And it came to pass one day, that they made peace with them because of

* יון.

† Took weapons into their hands.

‡ כפעם בפערם.

the want of every thing : and the law was given, and they burned the battering rams ; and Amalric returned unto his place.

208. And the Yavanim went to sea in ships : and the Lord cast a tempestuous wind into the sea, and the ships were broken against the rocks. And there was but a small number of them left: so may all thine enemies perish, O Lord !

209. And it came to pass when the year came round, that there was a great earthquake in the east country ; the like of which had never been : and the cities fell down to the foundation thereof, and there were left but a few of the many inhabitants. And Tripolis fell, and her inhabitants died ; and Antioch also had almost totally fallen. All the earth did mourn and was confounded, for it became waste suddenly as the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah ; and no hands were weak in it*. Also of the cities which belonged unto the Turks, the storm cast some down to the ground : are they not Aleppo†, and Cæsarea, and Amas‡, and Emesa, and the cities which were round about them ? And their cry went up unto heaven.

210. And Saladin gathered his host in that year, and went to fight against the land of Judah, in the tenth month ; and those who were numbered

* i. e. Their inhabitants perished in full vigor.

† אלעפיאה.

‡ אמסא.

of them were forty thousand men riding upon horses : and Amalric feared much. And he also hastened to go unto Ashkelon, and would go against them ; and with him were about two hundred and fifty horsemen. And Saladin went unto Gaza ; and they gave all its environs round about to be plundered ; and they returned with the captives and with the booty unto Egypt.

211. And Amalric became afraid, and sent messengers unto the kings of the west, saying, “Give us help from trouble*; for Saladin is great, and his fame goeth throughout all the earth†.” And he went also to the sea, and passed to Constantinople with ten gallies in that year, which is the year one thousand one hundred and seventy-one. And when the emperor heard of it, he went out to meet him, and embraced him ; and he kissed him, and honored him, and brought him into the city. And he said, “ May thy coming be in peace! is there not a cause ?‡” And they walked into the chamber. And he told the emperor what had brought him thither ; and he put it into his heart to return to war against Egypt, saying, “ The thing is easy for thee, and it is for thee to do it; and thy fame shall go throughout all the earth.” And the thing was pleasing in his sight ; and he vowed to do according to all that

* Ps. lx. 11. Hebrew text, v. 13.

† Esth. ix. 4.

‡ 1 Sam. xvii. 29.

he had spoken. And he comforted him, and spake unto his heart, and said, “ Set on bread ; ” and they eat, and drank, and rejoiced together. And Amalric arose, and he returned unto his ships ; and he went down to the sea, and came unto Ashkelon at that time. [כח]

212. Joseph the priest saith, “ Woe unto me, my mother, that thou hast borne me ! for evil impends from Tzaphrath, and destruction is in Bilbilis* ; upon her summer-fruits and upon her harvest is the destroyer fallen† .” And it came to pass in the year four thousand nine hundred and thirty-one, which is the year one thousand one hundred and seventy-one, that a Jew went to give unto his horse to drink at eventide ; and he found there a Gentile who went also thither. And when the Jew saw him he became afraid ; and there came out from his bosom a flap of fur, from under his clothes. And the horse of the Gentile saw it in the dark, and was also frightened, and turned back, and would not come to the water ; and the Gentile became alarmed, and returned unto his master, and told him, saying, “ I have seen a Jew, who did cast into the water a little boy, whom the Jews have killed ; and I was afraid, lest he should kill

* בִּיבְלוֹאִים, perhaps Bibilis or Bilbilis Nova, now Calatayud, a city of Aragon, near the ancient Bilbilis, the native place of Martialis, which is now called Banbola.

† Is. xvi. 9.

me also : and the horse also was startled at the rustling of the water ; so I came to tell thee." And in Bilbilis was a Jewess, a virtuous woman*, her name was Pultzilinah† ; and he knew of his master that he hated her, since yesterday and the day before. And it came to pass on the next morning, that he rode on his horse and went unto the governor of the city, who was a son of Belial ; and he spake unto him according to all these things ; and his wrath was kindled. And he took all the Jews, and they were about forty men, and he put them into the prison-house. And Pultzilinah comforted them ; for she trusted the governor since he loved her, because she was a virtuous woman. But she could not do any thing ; for his wife with her much fair speech caused him to yield‡ ; she spake accusations against the Jews : and the woman found no grace in his sight ; he hated her much in his heart. And he commanded the watchmen that they should not let Pultzilinah come within to speak unto him ; for she alone was not in the prison-house. And he sought occasion against them, to fall upon them ; but he could not, for there were no witnesses found to this evil thing, which they had wrongfully accused them of.

* פולצ'ילינה. † אַשְׁתֵּ־צִיל.

† Pultzilinah confided in the governor, but his wife talked him over. Comp. Prov. vii. 21.

And there came a priest and said, “ I will advise thee, my Lord, what thou shalt do ; and thou shalt bring out thy judgment into light : only do not take of them ransom.

213. And now, bring the servant that has seen it, and cast him into a reservoir of impure water ; and it shall come to pass, if his words are true, he shall swim upon the water ; and if not, he shall sink down as lead.” And they did so ; and they made the servant to swim ; and they brought him up : and they justified the wicked and condemned the just ; and all the city was moved about them. And the governor sent unto them a Jewish man to know what they would give him as a ransom for their souls. And they took counsel with the Gentiles and the Jews ; and they promised to give a hundred pounds, and their debts, which were about one hundred and eighty. While they were speaking, the priest stood to hinder them ; and he said unto the governor, “ Turn not thyself unto their offering.” And he turned his heart back, and hearkened no more unto them ; and no riches could profit in the day of wrath*. And the oppressor commanded, and they put them into a house of wood, and arranged wood and branches round about. And it came to pass when they brought them out into the street,

* Prov. xi. 4.

that they said unto them, “ Save your souls, and become like unto us, that ye may live and not die.” But they would not be defiled with the proud water: and they afflicted and chastised them, to see if they could perhaps turn them away from the God of Israel: but they would not. And one assisted the other, and said unto his brother, “ Be strong; and let us be strong for our God; for we are his people: let the Lord do what seemeth good in his sight.” And the oppressor commanded, and they took Rabbi Jechiel*, the son of Rabbi David, and Rabbi Jekothiel†, the son of Rabbi Judah, the priests, the disciples of our Rabbi Samuel, and Rabbi Judah, the son of Rabbi Aaron, and bound them with cords, and kindled a fire with the wood. And the fire blazed in the cords ‡ which were upon their hands, and they were torn asunder; and all three went out. And they said unto the servants of the oppressor, behold the fire had no power over us, and why do we not go away? And they said, “ As our soul liveth, ye shall not go away hence.” And they pushed them, and brought them again into the burning house. And they went out again, and seized a Gentile to bring him with them into the burning, for they were strong and valiant; and

* זְחִיאֵל.

† יְקֹתְּיָאֵל.

‡ i. e. Divided the cords which bound their hands.

the uncircumcised strengthened themselves, and took him from their hands ; and they killed them with the sword, and cast them into the fire. And they, as well as the rest of the Jews, who were about thirty-one souls, were not burned ; but their souls departed from them, and they died before the Lord. And when the uncircumcised saw it, they looked with astonishment one at another, and said, “ This is the finger of God ; surely they are saints, for they were holy.” And Rabbi David the priest, who dwelt in one of the cities of the oppressor, saw all this ; he went to intercede for them, but he effected nothing, because it was the Lord’s doing ; and it is marvellous in our eyes. And the rest of the Jews who were in his country gave unto the oppressor one thousand pounds* ; and the holy books they ransomed from his hands. And this plague was in the days of King Lewis the younger†, on the fourth day of the sabbath, on the twentieth day of the third month. These things they wrote from Orleans, which was nigh unto the slain of the Lord, unto Rabbi Jacob. And moreover they wrote, that it came to pass, that when the flame ascended, they lifted up their voices with one consent, and sang. And the uncircumcised said, “ We have heard your song, but we have never heard it like this. And we know

* ליט' *ליטראות*, an abbreviation of.

† יוניורי, junior.

it for certain, that it was the hymn **עלינו לשבח**, *It becomes us to laud**.”

214. O daughters of Israel, weep ye over these pure souls, who were lovely and pleasant in their lives, and in their death they were not divided. Put not on silk garments, dress not in purple†, “for glory is departed from Israel‡,” and let your brethren, the whole house of Israel, bewail the burning§. And they were then not given to be buried; and it came to pass, after some days, that the Jews came and buried their bones; and they wept very sore over them, for the sorrow was great. And all the Jews who were in Tzarphath, and in the isles of the sea, received that bitter day as a day of mourning and humiliation. So it is, according to the saying of our exalted Rabbi Jacob, the son of Rabbi Meir, when he writes, “This fast should be greater than the fast of Gedaliah; for this is a day of atonement.” And the Jews received that which they began to do||.

215. In that year came unto Cologne the noble Rabbi Benjamin, and Rabbi Abraham the scribe. And it came to pass as they were in the street of the city, that a money-changer stirred up a woman

* This hymn occurs in the Jewish prayer-book, near the conclusion of the morning and evening services.

† Comp. 2 Sam. i. 23. ‡ 1 Sam. iv. 21. § Lev. x. 6.

|| i.e. They commenced the practice, which they have since continued, of celebrating this fast.

of the daughters of the city against them, saying, “Behold the Hebrew men have brought unto us mixed silver, to deceive us; and they have given us this false money.” She lied*; for the changers had given it unto her, that she should speak falsely on that day. And vain persons gathered themselves round about them in thousands, and bound them, and chastised them, and put their feet into the stocks. The sons of Jacob went unto the nobles† when they heard thereof; and they vowed vows, and would not hearken; and the men were much grieved. And they went unto the bishop; but he spake roughly unto them, and put them off from one time unto another: he spake nothing to the purpose unto them. And it came to pass on the third day, that they brought them into the court, and said, “Give us a mediator;” but they would not hearken. And they spake of hewing off their hands; and the men of the city surrounded them to look on. And when the Jews heard of it, they rent their clothes, and went unto their houses of prayer; and they fasted, and mourned, and wept, both small and great. And they took out the book of the law, and made vows, and paid from hand to hand‡; and they let their tears flow

* בִּיחֲדָה.

† Magistrates.

‡ i. e. They promised to pay a certain sum, which was immediately collected.

down like a river. And God heard their cry, and put it into the hearts of the judges to take a bribe, lest they should shed innocent blood. And the congregation and the Jews who were round about gave a hundred and eight scudi* to save them; and themselves gave also thirty. Sing unto the Lord, for he has done excellent things. It is known in all the earth, that every [כָּה] one that cometh into the court of Cologne, and his judgment is concluded, after his sentence is for death, no gold nor gem can save him. And as for the Gentiles, they blew the trumpets, and sounded with a horn in their house of vanity, and pulled the bells with the cords of wickedness. They enclosed Benjamin, they persecuted him; they brought out Abraham, they trode him down without leaving him rest; but the Lord delivered them. There was not the like, from the time it became a nation. Blessed be the Lord, who has not given them as a prey unto their teeth! Amen and amen. And they went out and blessed the people, and gave thanks unto God; and all the people answered, "Amen." Remember it unto the congregation of Cologne for good, O God, and plead their cause! Ephraim, the son of Jacob, wrote all this, and I brought it into my book.

* Crowns.

In those days, Saladin went up twice unto the land of Judah, but he could not do any thing ; and he returned unto his country. And Nureddin the oppressor of the uncircumcised, the governor of Aleppo, died ; and he had reigned twenty-nine years ; and he left a good name among his enemies, for he was righteous in his generation, and a mighty man of valor.

216. And also the King Amalric died in the twelfth year of his reign, which is the year one thousand one hundred and seventy five, and his son Baldwin reigned in his stead, and was thirteen years old at that time ; and as he was a youth and had been sickly from his childhood, they gave the management of the government unto Raymond, the prince of Tripolis ; and he was unto them a shepherd.

217. In those days, Saladin took Damascus ; for he was called by the inhabitants of the city, when the son of Nureddin, their king, was near Aleppo ; and he was yet a youth ; and he hastened to go with his host unto the city of Cilicia ; and he took all the cities which belonged unto Nureddin, in that district, according as he had devised. And when the King Baldwin heard of it, he sent the prince of Tripolis against him, with a strong hand. And when Saladin heard of it, he sent messengers unto him, saying, “ Hinder me not from fighting against the son of Nureddin, according as it is in

my heart ; and I will give thee back the men whom Reginald, the prince of Antioch, has left with me as a pledge ; and they shall go their way free.” And the thing seemed good in the sight of the prince of Tripolis ; and he took those men and returned unto Jerusalem. He was yet fighting in that district, when Baldwin went to fight unto the borders of Damascus. And Shiroshidolo*, the brother of Saladin, the governor of the city, went out against him with a strong hand ; and he was smitten before Baldwin ; and many of his people fell by the edge of the sword, and the rest fled for their lives : and the uncircumcised took the booty and returned unto Jerusalem. And Saladin returned unto Egypt, after he had taken all the cities which belonged unto Nureddin. And he gathered again about twenty-six thousand men and went to avenge the vengeance of his brother. And when the King Baldwin heard of it, he gathered also his soldiers and went out from Ashkelon ; and with him were about three hundred and seventy-five horsemen clothed with coats of mail. And he set the battle in array against them ; and they destroyed of the men of Saladin much people, and the rest fled, and their lives were unto them a prey. And they pursued after

* שירושידולו, probably a corruption of Shemsoddaulah.

them until night. And Saladin fled, and with him were about one hundred horsemen ; and he returned unto his country. And the uncircumcised took the captives and the booty, and returned unto Jerusalem.

218. And Saladin went up again unto Jerusalem, to war against it, in the year one thousand one hundred and seventy-seven. And Baldwin went out against him ; and he set the battle in array against him ; and the men of Saladin were smitten ; and they turned their back ; and some of them fell slain to the ground, and the rest fled unto the camp in which Saladin was. And he was grieved ; and he, and the men that were with him, went also into the field ; and they set the battle in array against the uncircumcised ; and many fell before him slain : and some were smitten to the ground at that time. And the rest fled for their lives ; and also the king fled from the pits of the Turks at that time. And Odo*, the chief captain of the host, was taken alive ; and he died in the prison-house. In that year, Saladin did great things in the land of Judah ; and whithersoever he turned he did mischief ; and this was the Lord's doing. And they made peace with Saladin for two years, and the country had rest. And Saladin remembered

* אודו.

not his covenant, but gathered about twenty thousand men, and went up into Judah, and plundered the open cities. And there went out against him about seven hundred horsemen, and they set the battle in array against them; and the Turks were smitten before them. And about one thousand men of them fell by the edge of the sword; but of the uncircumcised they missed but a small number; and Saladin returned unto his country. And again he gathered soldiers, and passed over the river Euphrates, and went unto Aram Naharaim*, and he took Karam†, and Edessa, and all the cities which were round about them, and all the cities which belonged unto the brother of Nureddin, and there was none to deliver from his hand. And when Baldwin heard that he was gone into a far country he gathered his host, and went to fight against Damascus. And he besieged Soram‡, which was nigh unto it, and took it by force. And he went thence and besieged the fortress which Saladin had taken from his hand, until he brought it down; and he returned with all the prey and the captives unto Jerusalem.

219. And Lewis, the younger§, king of Tzaphrath, gave his consent, and they made his son Philip

* Mesopotamia. קַרְאָם † זֹרָאָם, Soras, or Soram.

§ The Hebrew text has לְדוֹבִיקוּ יוֹנִיאָרִי.

king before he was fifteen years old ; and they anointed him with oil. And they put the royal crown upon his head, the first time at Rheims*, and the second time at Paris, in the year one thousand one hundred and seventy-nine. And Philip was pleasing in the sight of his servants, because he was an oppressor of the Jews. And when he was chosen, he executed judgments among them, for they accused them wrongfully that every year they shed innocent blood ; and Israel was brought very low. And he was in his own eyes a lord of life†, and could not bear those who blasphemed and cursed. And he commanded, when he was chosen, that the name of God should be honored in his whole kingdom ; and the law was given at Paris and in all its environs.

220. And Saladin returned after he had taken all the cities of Aram Naharaim‡, and passed over the river Euphrates. And he returned unto the district of Cœlesyria, and took the great city of Aleppo on capitulation ; and the uncircumcised were much afraid. For the kingdoms of Saladin were round about them : Egypt on the west, and Aram Zobah§ on the east, and the land of Judah in the middle. And they fortified the cities of the border, and put sustenance|| into

* רינס. † נפש. ‡ Mesopotamia. § צובה. || צידה, provisions. Comp. Judg. vi. 4 ; 2 Sam. xix. 32.

them; for the fear of him fell upon them; and their hearts melted away and became like water.

221. And Baldwin became sick, and the leprosy broke out in his forehead*, besides elephantiasis† from which he had suffered from his childhood. And when he saw that his hope was lost, he set Guy of Lusignan, the husband of his sister, as a shepherd‡; only on the throne he was greater.

222. And Saladin and his host returned unto Damascus; and he went up unto Judah, and the uncircumcised went out against him, unto the place where he had pitched his tent, and encamped opposite them. And those who were numbered of them were one thousand three hundred horsemen clad in coats of mail, and fifteen thousand footmen. And at their head was Boemond, the prince of Antioch; and Raymond, the count of Tripolis; Henry, duke of Louvain§, a German; and Rodolph of Milan: four kings|| against one. [כז] And their hearts were divided, because they envied Guy, whom the king had exalted; and they said, "It is not good to fight." And Saladin, and the men that followed him, encamped there nigh unto them, eighteen days; and it was a shame to the uncircumcised. And

* 2 Chron. xxvi. 19. † חלי הפיל. ‡ Leader, governor.
§ לובאניאה. || Chiefs.

they did in that district according to their heart's desire; and there was none to make ashamed in any thing in the land* ; and they returned unto their country : and Saladin returned at the end of thirty days. And he besieged the city of Karak†, which was Selah Midbar‡, at first, and cast up trenches against it. And when the king saw what was done, he took away his ring from Guy, the husband of his sister, and gave it, by the counsel of the nobles, unto Baldwin, the son of his sister, whom she bore unto William of Montferrat§. And he made him king, and put the royal crown upon his head. And he gathered his host, and went to deliver the city from the hand of Saladin. And when Saladin heard it, he went away from the city, and returned unto his country, in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty: and the war ceased.

223. In that year, which is the year four thousand nine hundred and eighty, there went out in a ship some Hebrew men from Cologne, which is in Ashkenaz. And some of them went on shore, to go along the banks of the river. And it came to pass, when they were by the city of Bibrat||,

* i. e. To overawe. The author means to say that crime was committed with effrontery and impunity. Judges xviii. 7. •

† קראק, סלע מדבר, i. e. Petra Deserti.

‡ גואילילמו מונפיראטו §

|| ביבראט, probably Biberich, on the Rhine.

behold, there was another ship behind them. And the sailors thereof found a Gentile girl fallen on the bank of the river Rhine, and it was not known who had slain her; and they cried after them, saying, "Why have you slain this girl?" And they went on continually crying after them till they reached the city; and they smote them, and cast them alive into the river Rhine; and those also who were in the ship they cast in alive. And they pressed them much that they should change their glory; but they hallowed their Creator, and would not hearken. And the Emperor Frederic Barbarossa, fined the congregation five hundred pieces of gold; and the bishop also fined the Jews who were in his country, four thousand two hundred. Had it not been for the Lord of hosts, they would have been like Sodom, for the misery increased more and more. And they drew Rabbi Judah, one of the slain, by his feet, dragging and casting him about into the water and on the dry land, from city to city, from province to province. At Cologne also they dragged him from gate to gate. And they had almost swallowed the Jews up alive, had it not been that the Lord was for them, and gave them favor among the Gentiles. May his name be blessed!

224. After a few more days, the old King Baldwin ended his days; and also the young King

Baldwin died after him. And the government returned unto Guy, the husband of his sister; and this was evil in the sight of Raymond, the prince of Tripolis. And he exchanged words with Saladin*, and no man knew of it. And the Ishmaelites took of the cities of the uncircumcised according to their heart's desire, at that time.

225. And Guy, the king, sent messengers unto the kings of the west for assistance. And they came unto Philip in the days of his father, and gave him the keys of the sepulchre of their messiah, and the keys of the gates of Jerusalem. And he accepted them, and spake unto their hearts; and they assembled at Paris, and commanded the priests to preach unto the nobles to go unto Jerusalem. And he gathered soldiers, horsemen and footmen; and he gave them their hire, and they went unto Jerusalem.

226. And Saladin gathered again soldiers, Turks and Arabs, in multitudes, and came unto the land of Judah, and invaded Galilee. And the King Guy bound his chariot, and took his people with him, and went out against him with a strong hand; and Saladin went away from the city, and went out against him, and set the battle in array there from noon until evening. And it came to pass, at sunset, that they returned unto their

* i. e. They came to some agreement.

tents ; and they eat and drank, and kept watch all the night. And it came to pass, on the third day, that Saladin came near ; and the uncircumcised took counsel, and said, “What shall we do ?” And there appeared one of the soldiers, whose name was John, who knew the art of war, and understood the matter, and had dwelt with the Turks at first ; and he said, “Listen unto me, my lord, O king ; it is better to fight against the camp where the banner of Saladin is. For when it shall be pleasing in the sight of God, He will deliver him into our hand ; then shall the other camp be trodden down ; and if not, know that the evil is determined against us.” And the thing seemed good in the sight of the nobles ; but in the sight of Raymond, the prince of Tripolis, it seemed evil. And he confounded the people, saying, “Why do ye hearken unto the counsel of this man of Belial, who departed from our precepts, and now has returned unto us ? And with what will he reconcile himself unto them ? Is it not with the heads of these nobles, who are with us to day ?” And they despised the counsel of the mean man. And they fell upon their enemies, and arrayed a battle against them in the heat of the day ; and they became tired, and the people thirsted after water. And they could not stand before the fierceness of

the arrows, and the sling-stones ; and they turned their neck, and fled for their lives. And the prince of Tripolis, and the men that followed him, cast away their weapons of war, and fled. And they went unto the fortress of Saphet* ; and many of the uncircumcised fell to the ground in that battle. And when the archers shot, they slew the bishop of Acco, who bore the image† ; and it came to pass, when his soul was departing, that he gave the image unto his companion, and he gave it unto King Guy, at that time. And the king, and the men that were with him, fought ; and his men fell slain to the ground ; and they seized him alive with his image, and carried him away with them. There was not such a battle from the time that the uncircumcised went to inherit dwellings which belonged not to them. And they said, “Our hope is lost!” for their valiant men fell at that time, and some were taken alive. And Saladin commanded, saying, “Ye shall not leave any soul alive :” and they brought them down in blood unto the grave. And also Reginald, who had been prince of Antioch, the oppressor of the Turks, and a man of strife, they brought before him, and he smote off his head, and tore him in pieces ; and as his sword

* סָפֵת.

† The crucifix, which was considered to be the true cross.

had made women childless, so was his mother made childless at that time*: the Lord is a God of vengeance. And Saladin divided the captives and the booty among the soldiers, and gave thanks unto God.

227. The King Guy, alone, he left alive, and the chief of the host which was taken with him ; for the king besought Saladin, and he gave them unto him.

228. And it came to pass, after the Lord had given the enemies of Saladin into his hands, that he went thence and besieged Acco ; and they gave the city into his hand on the third day. And he went unto Beyrout ; and the men of the city gave it also into his hands. There was no city which was too strong for him, until he came to Ashkelon, at that time : for all the soldiers who were in the midst of the city died. And Saladin commanded, and they hurt not any man nor any woman, in all the cities which were opened unto him in peace. The men of Ashkelon alone would not hearken unto him, saying, “The city shall not be given up, until we hear what has been done at Jerusalem ;” for it was fortified. And they besieged it nine days, and fought against it daily ; and it came to pass, when he could not prevail, that he went up thence unto Jerusalem.

* 1 Sam. xv. 33.

229. And when the uncircumcised who were at Jerusalem heard that the king and their graven image were taken, and that their valiant and their warlike men were dead, their hearts melted away and became like water. And they prayed to their god, [מָנוֹת] and proclaimed fasts, and let their tears flow like a brook ; but he hearkened not unto them ; for woe to him that saith to the wood Arise ! and there is no breath at all in the midst of it*.

230. And Saladin came nigh unto Jerusalem by the way of the sea, and besieged it ; and the city was besieged. And they fought against it day by day, and cast up trenches against it ; and they battered its walls till they were cast down ; and the men of the city were much afraid. And it came to pass, when they saw that there was no strength in their hand, and that the evil was determined against them, they gave the city into their hand ; and they gave silver as the ransom for their souls ; and they, and their wives, and their children, went away free. And Saladin came into the city in the eighth month, which is the month Kheshvan†, on the second of the month, in the year one thousand one hundred and eighty-two. And they put their horses into the churches in

* Hab. ii. 19.

† נוֹמֵן, nearly coincides with our November.

scorn of the uncircumcised ; only unto the great high place* they did not come, for the uncircumcised from Assyria† ransomed it with silver and gold in abundance. But the ruined sanctuary of the Lord the Turks honored. And Saladin commanded, and they washed the walls of the house round about with rose-water‡, before they came thither. And they perfumed it with a sweet savour ; and he went within, and prayed unto the Lord, and went out.

231. And he commanded, and they brake the bells of the churches completely in pieces with hammers ; and they are still there broken, for a scorn unto the uncircumcised until this day. This was the Lord's doing (it is marvellous in our eyes) that He might cast them away from his territory ; for the land is filled with violence through them§, and their ways were before Him as the uncleanness of an impure woman. And the priests went out from the midst of it ; and the western uncircumcised, and the Nazarenes of Hodu||, and the Maronites, and the Jacobites, and the Georgians, and the Armenians, and the Nestorians, remained there ; and they were unto the Turks servants unto tribute ; they beat their shoulder to the burden.

* Cathedral.

‡ וְוַרְדִּים

|| The Hindu Christians, perhaps Christians of St. Thomas.

מְאֹשֵׁר

§ Gen. vi. 11 and 13.

232. And the report was heard, and they gave the rest of the fenced cities unto Saladin; there was no city too strong for him, for the Lord was with him.

233. And it was told in the western countries, “Saladin has come into Jerusalem, and behold, he has placed himself conveniently:” and Ashkenaz was much moved*. And they set their heart to go and to save it from his hand. And they arose against the people of God, to swallow them up alive†. But the Lord gave them favor in the sight of the Emperor Frederic Barbarossa, and he commanded the priests that they should not speak of the Jews either good or evil; and he delivered them with all his strength; and no man touched them. And they gave presents unto the emperor, and he accepted their persons. Remember it for good unto him, O God! Blessed for ever be the name of the Lord, who has not given them as a prey unto their teeth!‡

234. In that year, which is the year one thousand one hundred and eighty-two, died Lewis the younger§, the king of Tzraphath; and the government was established in the hand of his son Philip, who had been appointed king in the year one thousand one hundred and seventy-nine in the days

* Ruth i. 19.

† Prov. i. 12.

‡ Psalm cxxiv. 6.

לודוביקו יוניאורי §

of his father Lewis. And the western uncircumcised and the French, who came out from Jerusalem, went, they, and their wives, and their children, unto the coast of Tripolis ; for they said, “ In its shadow we shall live among the Gentiles.” And the prince of Tripolis, and the sons of Belial who were with him, went out against them, and they took all that they had, and injured them more than the Turks had injured them. And there was among those who came, a woman with her son upon her shoulders ; and they took all that she had. And she went about weeping and naked, who had never tried to set the sole of her foot upon the ground. And her soul was embittered ; and she cast her son into the sea for anguish of spirit, and for want of every thing ; and she was very much grieved.

235. And Saladin wrote unto Raymond, the prince of Tripolis, saying, “ Let also the men of thy city stand in the covenant with me, according as thou hast sworn to do.” And Raymond commanded, and they called all the assembly ; and he would have them to swear to do according to all that he should tell them ; and they said, “ Far be it from us, that we should swear before we know why and wherefore.” And he pressed them. And they said, “ Let us alone until the morning, and we will return thee an answer.” And the thing seemed good in his sight, and they

returned every one unto his house. And it came to pass, on the next morning, that they found him lying dead upon his bed ; they wist not what had happened unto him. And they went to see him, and found him circumcised* ; then did his servants reveal his secret, that he was confederate with Saladin ; and this was not known until the day of his death ; and he had sworn unto him to give the city into his hand, and to be unto him a servant who should bring presents all his days.

236. And Saladin removed, and went unto Ashkelon, and besieged it ; and they cast up a trench against it. And it came to pass, when they saw that there was no strength in their hand, they called for peace, and said, “ We will give the city into thy hand ; only thou shalt send away from thee our king, Guy, and the chief of his host, free.” And the thing seemed good in his sight ; and he did according to all that they asked. And the men of the city went away free, they, and their wives, and their children. And he removed from Ashkelon, and besieged Tyre ; and they cast up trenches against it, but could not prevail against it ; for the rest of the soldiers gathered themselves together in it, and delivered it from his hand.

* מהל, cædit circumcidit ; מהול, circumcisus.

237. And they turned away from it; and he sent his hosts unto the border of Antioch. And he would not fight against the cities which were on the coast of the sea; for the chief of the host, William, king of Sicily*, had arrived there; and with him were fifty galleys† to help the uncircumcised; and he was unto them instead of eyes‡. And Saladin went also unto the circuit of Antioch, and took it, as a man would take the tip of the ear§, in three months. But he came not nigh unto the city, for he thought, “I will take all its environs, and strip it naked; then will they come out unto me for peace.” And he returned again unto the land of Judah, and encamped against Tyre the second time; and besieged it round about, for it was left unto the uncircumcised at that time. Then arrived there Conrad, the son of Boniface, the prince of Montferrat||; and he was a valiant man; and he came into the city on the day when the king was seized. And he said unto the elders of the city, “If I should deliver you from the hand of Saladin, shall I be head over you?” And the elders of the city said, “The Lord be a hearer between us¶, if we do not according to thy words:” and they made him a

* ציציליה.

+ דוניאות.

‡ Numb. x. 31.

§ i. e. Easily, without trouble. See page 143. || מונפירה. ¶ שומע בינוינו, witness among us. Judges xi. 10.

head and a prince over them. And he began to deliver them from the hand of Saladin : and he fell upon his camp suddenly, and drove them away from the city, and their ships he burned with fire ; and it grieved Saladin, and he went away from the city. And he besieged the towers which the uncircumcised had round about, many days, and took them by force ; after which he brake their staff of bread*.

238. And when the kings of the west heard it, they turned their heart to the avenging of the blood of the uncircumcised, which had been shed by the hands of the Turks. And they took counsel together concerning the kingdom of Tzraphath ; Henry, king of England, and Philip the wicked, king of Tzraphath, and the priest Terinski† from Tyre, were among them. On the third day of the month of January, they assembled with one accord, and offered themselves willingly before the priest to go ; and they put upon themselves the cross as a sign. And many nobles who were with them offered themselves also willingly to go ; and they made a pole, and erected it as a sign on the place where these two kings spake, and built

* i. e. Saladin cut off their provisions. מטה לחם, sustentaculum panis. Ps. cv. 16.

† טירינשׁ, perhaps Terentius.

there a high place* for a memorial; and they both made a covenant; and the name of the place was called “The Holy Field;” but it should be called “The Cursed Field†:” [טב] it is even at this day in the land of Normandy.

239. And the Jews multiplied in Paris and its environs in those days; and waxed very mighty in riches and goods. And they took unto themselves men-servants and maid-servants, the daughters of strange gods‡, from every one whomsoever they chose; and the French envied them much. And they laid against them false accusations, saying, “Ye take the silver vessels and the goblets which are in the churches as a pledge, and despise them, and give to drink out of them unto your sons and your daughters for the sake of defiling them.” And they began to hate them more, and found false accusations against them, saying, that every year they nailed a Gentile on the cross in a cave; and so they embittered their lives. And when King Philip heard of it, in his youth in the days of his father, he observed the thing. And it came to pass, in the year four

* בָּמָה, a church, especially a cathedral; because cathedrals are usually built on high ground.

† שְׂדֵה חֲרֵם, campus anathematis.

‡ Addicted, according to the views of the Rabbi, to idolatrous worship.

thousand nine hundred and forty-six of the creation, which is the year one thousand one hundred and eighty-six, he commanded, and they seized the Jews which were in his whole kingdom ; and he took their gold and their silver, and drove them away from his country. And many changed their glory for an unprofitable one, at that time ; and of the houses of prayer he made high places* for his graven image ; for the spirit of whoredom† had seduced them. “ Sec, O Lord, and judge, concerning this persecution ! ” saith the book Eben Bochén (i. e. The Touch-stone), “ I heard them saying unto the mountains, ‘ Cover us, ye hills, fall upon us ! ’ I was bowed down at the hearing of the evil which had befallen my people. I was confounded when I saw the destruction of my generation ; and my soul fainted at the misery of Israel. For a spirit of the rulers came upon us these twenty-seven years ago, to lead away my people captive among the first of captives. Over the holy sheep they drew a measuring line ; he overturned them into nothingness ; and with a strong hand he drove them away from his country.”

240. And it came to pass, after two years, that they took counsel at Paris ; and many nobles and honorable men offered themselves willingly

* Churches.

† Idolatry.

to go to war in the land of Judah; and they put signs upon themselves*. And the king commanded, saying, “ Whosoever goeth not with us to war, he must give the tenth of all which he hath, to give unto the soldiers.” And they called it the tithe of Saladin unto this day.

241. Also the Emperor Frederic turned his heart to go in that selfsame year, after they had made peace with the Pope Alexander, as a ransom, to redeem his soul, as he had vowed unto him. And, with tears in his eyes, he also put the cross upon his shoulder. And he did every thing that he had promised, and went with a strong hand, with horsemen and footmen; and Conrad, his second son, went also with him. From other provinces also, there went many nobles and honorable men unto this war. And likewise the men of Pisa went with the great ships, and the galleys; and their bishop was the head over them. And from Friesland† and from Danzig‡, went fifty ships of war; and from Flanders thirty-seven merchant ships, bearing weapons of war and soldiers.

242. And it came to pass, when the kings of

* i. e. They took the sign of the cross. † פְּרִישֵׁיָה.

‡ In the Hebrew text, Datzia, דַּצְיָה, which might also be read Ratzia, since ת and צ can scarcely be distinguished.

Tzaphrath and of England made ready their soldiers and weapons of war, and corn, and bread, and other victuals, to go their way, that Richard, the son of the king of England, came with a strong hand into the land of the count of Toulouse, which was under the French kings, and took many fortresses. And when Raymond told King Philip all that he had done, his wrath burned within him. And moreover he gathered soldiers, and went unto the cities of England*, and took also many fortresses in the province of Aloydinia†, and put a garrison into them. And Henry, the king of England, also filled his hand on that day; and he came into Tzaphrath with a strong hand; and whithersoever he turned, he did mischief. And all this was the Lord's doing. And it came to pass, when the winter came, that they made peace between themselves; and the war ceased.

243. Then said Richard unto Henry, king of England, his father, “ Give me my wife, the sister of Philip, king of Tzaphrath, who was given as a pledge unto thee by her father, to give her unto my first-born brother to wife; and behold, my brother Henry is dead, and I have the right of

* In Normandy.

† אלואידניה, may be read Aloydinia, Aloirinia, or Alvedonia.

the inheritance. But the king hearkened not unto him; and it grieved his son Richard much. And he went away from him unto the king of Tzaphrath; and they made a covenant together; and he sware, saying, “I will not rebel against thy word all days to come.” And it came to pass, at the time when kings go forth to battle, that Philip went with a strong hand against England. And the King Richard* fled from before him from the city Tzinomaninsi†; and the king took it, and came unto the river Liger‡, and Philip passed over first, and all the soldiers went after him. And he took the city of Tours§ with a strong hand. And King Henry fell sick, and died of grief; for the Lord raised up evil from his own house, when he was by the castle Chinon||. And he died, and his son Richard reigned in his stead in the year four thousand nine hundred and fifty, which is the year one thousand one hundred and ninety; and they put the royal crown upon his head in the city of London, in the royal palace, which was without the city.

* A mistake of the author, or an error of the press; it should be King Henry.

† צנומאנינשׁ, probably Le Mans, the capital of Maine, formerly called Cenomanum.

‡ ליניר, the Loire.

§ טורונינשׁ, Turones, now called Tours.

|| קינוניס, may be read Kenonis.

244. And there gathered themselves together in that place, much people from Tzraphath and from the isles of the sea. And also the Jews, the heads of the people, were among those who came to bring gifts unto the king. And the people murmured against them, saying, "The thing is not right, that the Jews should look at the crown wherewith the priests crowned him;" and they pursued them and reviled them. But the king knew nothing of it. And a report was heard in the city, saying, "The word came forth from the mouth of the king, to destroy the Jews." And they arose suddenly against them, and pulled down their houses and their towers, and killed of them about thirty men. And some of them slaughtered their children and themselves, that they might not abide that bitter day: there fell slain Rabbi Jacob from Orleans, for the sake of the holiness of his Creator, on that fearful day. But of all this King Richard knew nothing, till he heard the voice of the multitude; and he said, "What is this to-day?" and the door-keeper said, "Nothing; only that the boys rejoice, and are merry in heart." And it came to pass, when he heard this great evil, his anger was much kindled, and his wrath burned within him. And he commanded, and they tied the door-keeper to the tails of the horses, and dragged him, and

cast him about in the markets, and in the streets, until his spirit departed, and he died. Blessed be He who giveth vengeance ! Amen.

248. And it came to pass in that year, that a Gentile arose against a Hebrew man, and killed him (for he was an enemy unto him) in the city of Bruges*, and in their books it is called Brugget, in the land of Tzraphath. And his relations cried unto the princes who were in the city. And they seized the murderer, and put him in prison. And they brought him out on the day of Purim†, and hanged him upon a tree : and they set not their hearts thereon § that he was the servant of the king of Tzraphath. And when Philip heard of it, his wrath burned within him. And he made ready his chariot, and his people he took with him, and came into the city of Brugge ; and he commanded, and they burned the Jews with fire ; and his wrath was appeased. And in their books I found that those who were burned were eighty in number. And all of them were rich, wise, and experienced men,

* ברישׁ.

† בראיא.

‡ The feast of Purim (lots), or of Haman, is celebrated in remembrance of the narrow escape of the whole Jewish nation from destruction, which is related in the book of Esther. It is celebrated about the middle of March. The occurrence related in the text must have been especially agreeable to the Jews, as it exemplified the fate of Haman on the anniversary of his death.

§ i. e. They considered not.

and rabbies ; and they would not be defiled by the proud waters. And Rabbi Yom-Tob* strengthened himself on that day, and he slaughtered many of them, lest they should be defiled by the water ; and the rest were burned on that bitter day ; only the boys who were not full thirteen years, he commanded should not be touched : and their lives were unto them a prey. [ל]

246. And in the year four thousand nine hundred and fifty-one, which is the year one thousand one hundred and ninety-one, the deluded arose against the people of God who were in the city of York†, which is in England, on the Great Sabbath-day‡ ; and they fled into their houses of prayer. And the Rabbi Yom-Tob, stood up and slaughtered some among them ; and also other men filled their hands on that bitter day. And there was one who commanded to slaughter his only son, who had never ventured to set the sole of his feet upon the ground ; and some were burned for the unity of their Creator ; and the Holy One of Israel was hallowed by them. And the number of the slain was one hundred and fifty souls of men, women, and children. And they

* **יום טוב** *Good-day*, or *Feast-day*, is a common Jewish name.

† **אברוד**.

‡ **בימים שבת הנדרול**. i.e. On the Sabbath next before the Passover, which occurs a month after Purim.

pulled down the houses, and laid hand on the prey ; and took great wealth, and a heap of pleasant books, more precious than gold and fine gold, and brought them unto Cologne, and sold them unto the Jews. So did our enemies in other places : even in a city wherein there were but twenty men found, they arose against them suddenly, and killed them, because they would not be defiled by the proud waters. See, O Lord ! and behold, and plead their cause !

247. And Guy, the king of the uncircumcised that were in the land of Judah, by the counsel of his nobles, purposed to go to Tyre, to join the soldiers who were there ; and he dwelt near Tripolis, at that time. And he sent messengers unto Conrad, the prince of Monferrat, to ask of him the city ; but Conrad listened not to his words, and the king returned back. And the report was heard at Tyre, which is Tzor ; and there went out from the city, the men of the host who belonged to the king of Sicily and to Berthold, the prince of the Germans ; and it was known among the men of the host who followed them ; and they pitched their tents round about the city. And when Saladin, who was besieging the tower of Belporto at that time, heard it, he sent a part of his men, and they fell suddenly upon them, and set the battle in array against them ; and the

men of Saladin were smitten ; and many fell by the sword, and many were taken alive ; and the rest fled, and their life was a prey unto them.

248. And Richard, the king of England, sent messengers, as he was sitting on his royal throne, unto Philip, king of Tzaphrath ; and they made a covenant together, like unto the first covenant, which was in the days of his father. And he gave him back all the cities which he had taken from his father. Then they joined themselves together to go to the war of the land of Judah and Jerusalem.

249. And King Guy, and the soldiers who followed him, went and besieged Acco. And when Saladin heard of it, he arose from the tower, and went also thither. And he fell upon them by the way of the north, and destroyed of them much people on that day.

250. In those days arrived many of the princes of the west, and their host, in the ships of the Frieslanders*, and brought with them sustenance, and besieged the city round about ; and the city became in a state of siege.

251. And Saladin sent ships, and soldiers, and victuals, from Alexandria ; and they reached the city, and it was a shame unto the uncircumcised.

And they brought upon them much misery and wrong. They became weary of their lives in that war. And the Ishmaelites fell daily upon them, and kindled fire in the battering rams*, and shed their blood like water. And the plague was among them because of the famine, and of want of every thing, and of the foulness of the air, and of hard labour. And the people had no bread; for a measure that was sold for a shekel, was not found among sixty men in that camp. And they said one unto another, “What! shall we sit here and die? Now come and let us fall upon the camp of Saladin: if God will let us live, we shall live; and if he will deliver us into the hand of our enemies, we shall die.” And they revolted against the command of the chief captain of the host, and went on their way proudly: and there were about twenty thousand men drawing the sword; and when the Ishmaelites heard of it, they went out from the camp, and left the tents as they were, with subtlety; and the hungry uncircumcised came into the tents, and did eat and drink, until it came out from their nostrils†; and they took of the cloth, and of the vessels, as much as they could, and went away. The food was yet between

* וַיִּצְתֹּנוּ אֲשֶׁר בָּאָלִים הַמְנֻחִים, *accenderunt ignem in arietibus ferientibus*; i. e. they set the engines of the besiegers on fire.

† Num. xi. 20.

their teeth, when the Ishmaelites arrived and fell upon them suddenly, and slew them, and discomfited them ; and they fell by the edge of the sword : there was but a small number left. And when the men of the city heard of it, they went also out suddenly, and fell upon the camp of the uncircumcised, and all the camp was moved. And if it had not been for Godfrey of Lusignan, who by his wisdom stood in the breach, they had almost all been given unto the spoiler. And the Ishmaelites returned back ; and many fell by the sword, and the rest returned unto the city.

252. While they were besieging Acco, there arrived Henry, a kinsman of the king of Tzarpinth, at Tyre, and with him soldiers in abundance. And they came also into the camp which was at Acco ; and they received them with gladness.

253. In those days went also the Emperor Frederic Barbarossa, with his horsemen and his host, unto Constantinople; for there was peace between Frederic and between the emperor of Constantinople at that time ; and they made a covenant together. And he passed over the sea of the Hellespont, and they came unto the country of Asia. And the soul of the people became weary in the road for want of every thing. And they came unto the kingdom of Iconium ; and when

the sultan saw this, he was afraid and sore distressed. And he promised to give them plenty of food for money, but they found no truth in his mouth; and he violated his covenant, and went out against them in the road with a strong hand. And the wrath of Frederic was kindled, and he went out against him, and pursued after him unto Iconium, and plundered the open cities; his eye had no compassion upon them. And he removed thence, and went on his journey towards Cilicia*: and it came to pass, when they passed through a strait place, that they found there Turks in multitudes, which sat in an ambush in the clefts of the rocks; for they thought, “We shall fall upon them suddenly, and not one shall be left of them.” And this was told unto Frederic, and he went on his journey and fell upon them like a bear bereaved of her whelps; and they fled before him. And they pursued after them unto the plain, and destroyed much people of them. And he went towards Cilicia; and Leo†, the chief of the Armenians, received him with gladness. And he gave them sufficient provisions; and they dwelt there many days. And they rejoiced there together; and went out to hunt game day by day.

254. And it came to pass, one day, that Frederic went unto the water of the river to bathe, as the day was warm; and there met him messengers of death, and he was drowned in the water of the river like a stone*; and there was none to deliver him. And all the nobles that were with him, wept over him.

255. And Saladin was much afraid, and he was amazed before they came; for it was not known that Frederic had died; and he thought in his heart to leave all the country to return unto Egypt.

256. And he commanded, and they cast down the walls of Laodicea†, and the wall of the Gibiltorsi‡, and the wall of [אַל] Byblos§, and the walls of Beyrout and Sidon, lest the uncircumcised should enter them, to be as thorns in the sides of the circumcised, according as they did until that day.

257. And Conrad, the son of Frederic, sent messengers unto the King Guy, after the death of his father. And they told him all the trouble which had befallen them in the way, and asked of him wise, experienced, and warlike men, to show them the way; for they said, “We will

* Rabbi Joseph would say, “The emperor sank down like a stone and was drowned.” Compare Exod. xv. 4, 5.

‡ לאודיצי ניבילטורשי § ביבליאי

fight against the cities which the Turks have taken before them; then we will come to you." And Conrad did not rely upon the prince of Antioch; for he heard what the prince of Tripolis had done, and he feared to come nigh unto him.

258 And the king sent unto him Baldwin and Galgano*; and they bowed before him, and spake unto him, saying, "It is good to dwell in the country of Antioch a year or ten months, for it is a land of pasture." And he hearkened unto them, and pitched his tent there.

259. And it came to pass, when they were in that fat country, that the men of Ashkenaz did eat and drink after their heart's desire, until it came out of their nostrils, and became loathsome unto them.

260. And the wrath of the Lord was kindled against the people: and a plague broke out in that mighty camp, and much people died of them; and there remained but a few of the many. And Conrad warred not according as it was in his heart, for the stars fought from heaven†; and he went to sea in ships, and came unto Tyre, and buried there his father Frederic, and mourned over him many days.

261. And when Saladin heard that the men of

* גָּלְגָּלוֹן.

† i. e. He perceived that his expedition was not favored by heaven. Compare Judges v. 20.

the emperor were come unto Acco, he sent Todikin*, the chief captain of his host, against him with a strong hand : but the camp of Saladin became very low. And the nobles of the uncircumcised said that they would fight against Saladin. But the men of the marquis of Montferrat, the prince of Tyre, refused and would not fight, unless their master would remain among them ; and they remained in the camp in their place.

262. And Saladin was afraid lest they should fall upon him suddenly ; and he arose from the place where he was, and pitched his tent afar off ; and they dwelt securely. Then came Conrad, the son of Frederic, and the men who were left from the plague following him, into the camp ; and they were about seven hundred men drawing swords. . And the king accepted him, and honored him ; and he comforted him, and spake unto his heart ; and they came into the tent. And they put the soldiers in array to fight against the city, and divided the walls between themselves†. And they fought against it, and could not prevail against it ; for the men of Tyre had not filled their hands, because they were fighting against their brethren‡,

* טודיקין.

† i. e. They appointed to each a certain point of attack.

‡ i. e. The Tyrians did not take up the matter energetically ; but very insufficiently assisted King Guy in his assault upon Acco.

for their hearts were not perfect with the king ; and they returned back with shame on that day.

263. In those days, two daughters of the King Guy died, whom Sybilla*, the daughter of the King Amalric, had borne unto him ; and it came to pass, after some days, that his wife died also. And King Guy was left alone, and had no children.

264. And Humphrey†, the husband of Isabella‡, the second daughter of the King Amalric, exalted himself, saying : “ I will be king ; for unto my wife belongeth the right of the government : ” for so had their father commanded before his death ; also Baldwin the Leper, commanded according to these words.

265. And when Guy, who was lifted up, and who was anointed with the impure oil in Jerusalem, heard of it, it was evil in his sight. And he said, “ Whom have I defrauded ? Whom have I oppressed ? Or of whom have I received any bribe, that they change my glory to-day ? Let them assemble themselves before us in the presence of the king of Tzaphrath, when he cometh unto us ; and what proceedeth from his mouth we will do.” And

* שִׁבְילָה.

† Rabbi Joseph writes נֵיאוֹפְרִידּוֹ ; but Humphrey of Thoron was the person.

‡ Rabbi Joseph writes אַלְיָשָׁבֶת ; but the wife of Humphrey was called Isabella, which is the Spanish equivalent for Elizabeth.

Henry, the count of Champagne*, spake in the matter of the king regent in that camp†. And Henry said, “ This is the thing that ye should do, that we may live and not die : let the revenues of the sea and the tributes, and the penalties belong unto the prince Humphrey‡ ; only on the throne shall Guy be greater than he ; and Guy shall reign over us all the days.” And it grieved Guy much ; and he called the men of the host, who had the first seats in the kingdom ; and he would fight against the Ishmaelites, and said, “ I will die at this time, that I may come out from the deceitful counsels of this tempestuous time, which give me no rest, and will not let me swallow my spittle§ from my youth unto this day.” And the chiefs of the host feared lest he should die in the battle, and the rest of the host should be spoiled. And they spake unto his heart, and brought him back to his office as at the first ; and his wrath was appeased.

266. And when the marquis of Montferrat, the prince of Tyre, saw that the right of the government belonged unto Isabella, the daughter of Amalric, he went and took her from her husband,

* קאנפאניאח.

† i.e. The count advocated the king's cause, or spoke in his behalf. ‡ Here spelled איאופרידז.

§ i.e. They give me not a moment's rest. The same words occur in Job vii. 19, though in quite a different sense.

by the desire of Colomaria*, her mother, unto him to wife. And it grieved the uncircumcised, for he had done wickedness; and they said nothing unto him. For they had no sustenance, except only by the way of Tyre, in those days. And the prince of Tyre gave precious things and presents unto the chiefs of the host, to find favor in their sight, and that they should be a help unto him.

267. And Philip also, the king of Tzaphrath, hastened to go unto the land of Judah; and he went to sea in ships at Genoa, and went unto Messina which is in Sicily; and King Tancred received him with gladness, and gave them sustenance for the road. And also Richard, the king of England, set his steps on the way in the month of August, with much people, and a strong hand. And Philip removed thence, and went on his journey and came unto Acco, on the eve of their Easter†, in the month Abib. And it was unto the uncircumcised a restoration of life; and they looked on him as though they had seen the face of God‡; and they pitched their tents there, and made him a house of wood; and he dwelt there. And he would not fight against the city until the king of England came; for so they had both agreed.

268. And Richard, the king of England, came

* קולומאריה, Maria Comnena.

† בערב פסחים, *their* not *our* Easter. ‡ Gen. xxxiii. 10.

unto the Isle of Cyprus*. And when he heard that the prince who was there had revolted against his master, and against the emperor of Constantinople, he fell upon him suddenly, and took his whole country from his hand ; and he took him alive, and his daughter, and all his treasures†, because he came not out with bread and wine to meet the soldiers who went before him ; and he put a garrison in that country, and went his way. And he lifted up his eyes and looked ; and behold there came a large ship against them ; and in the midst of it were soldiers, and corn, and bread, and victuals, which Saladin had sent unto Acco as help. And he commanded, and they went out against it, and took it, and burned it with fire ; and the men of the ship they slew with the edge of the sword. And he came also unto Acco, and they received him with gladness ; and *his men* pitched their tents round about the city.

269. And it came to pass, when they were come, that they fought against it daily, and cast up trenches against it. In those days, there died many princes in the camp of the uncircumcised ; and these are their names :—Theobald, the seneschal of the French ; the prince Partitzinsi ; the prince of Clermont ; the prince [לב] of Burgundy ; the prince

of Suabia, which is Babirah* ; and the son of Frederic. And *the hosts* remained there many days. And when the men of the city saw that they had no strength in their hand to retain power against the arrogance of those uncircumcised kings, they called unto them for peace. The terms of the peace were, that they should give the city into their hand, and two hundred pieces of gold to ransom their souls ; and that they should go free at their pleasure. And they promised also to give back the wood† which Saladin took on the day of battle ; and they did so.

270. And they came into the city in the fifth month, in the year one thousand one hundred and ninety-four. And it grieved Saladin at his heart ; and he was afraid and sorely distressed. And he commanded, and they cast down the walls of the cities which were on the coast of the sea ; the wall of Porphyria‡, and the walls of Cæsarea and of Ashkelon, and the wall of Damietta§, lest the uncircumcised should fortify themselves therein ; for he knew not what the day might bring forth.

271. And the two kings divided the provision which was in the city unto the soldiers ; each one took according to his numbers, for they were

* באבירה.

† The pretended true cross.

פּוֹרְפִּירְיָה פֿ.

‡ אַמִּיאַתָּה.

hungry ; and also the captives they divided between them at that time.

272. And it came to pass on a day, that Richard, the king of England, commanded, and they slaughtered five thousand men of the captives who were in his hand in one day, because they gave not back the wood* according as they had vowed; and the captives who were in the kingdom of Saladin were not redeemed, save only the rich who gave a ransom for their souls, and went away free.

273. And the king of Tzaphrath exchanged the captives who were with him for the uncircumcised who were in the hands of the Turks ; and they returned unto their possessions.

274. And the Lord confounded their speech : one said “ Let us go down unto Egypt, and make a breach therein for us ; ” and another said, “ Let us go unto Jerusalem, and afterwards we will go unto Damascus.” But none would listen unto the speech of his fellow : and they accomplished nothing of all this : and it was the Lord’s doing. And the hearts of these kings were not perfect one with the other. For they were a very foward generation, children in whom was no faith†.

275. And Philip was afraid of the perverseness

* ψυλλα ; i. c. the cross.

† Deut. xxxii. 20.

of Richard. For Saladin had sent unto him messengers, with a present in their hands; and Richard took it with gladness.

276. And Henry became very sick, and said that he would return unto his kingdom and his country at that time. And when Philip, the king of Tzraphath, heard of it, he envied in his heart, saying, “Now will he return unto his country; and while we fight in the *hostile* country, he will leave the land.” And he also set his heart to return unto Tzraphath at that time. And he gave the guidance of his troops unto the duke of Burgundy, and removed from that place. And the nobles who went with him were very wroth. And he went on his journey unto Apulia*, and returned unto his palace and his country,

277. And Richard also removed thence, for he likewise was jealous for his kingdom and his country. And he hastened and went to sea; for he relied not upon the oath which Philip had taken not to fight against him, until fifty days should be passed after he should have returned unto his home in the country of England. And he set Henry, his sister’s son, the prince of Champagne, over his hosts which he left there, as head and governor. And he put them as garrisons for the

cities of the sea, which were in the land of Judah, at that time. And it came to pass when he returned, that the Lord drove the sea with a strong east wind ; and its waves raged, and most of his ships were broken, and his men sank down as lead. And King Richard was left, and a few of the nobles who were with him. And Richard disguised himself, and went by the way of Austria ; and Leopold, the duke of that country, seized him, for they recognized him. And they took all that the sea had left. And they delivered him into the hand of the Emperor Henry who put him in prison. And he dwelled there eighteen months. Henry hurt his soul with fetters, and shortened his days*. And Richard gave two hundred thousand marks of silver for the ransom of his life. And Leopold sent him away free ; and he went down to the sea in ships, and returned unto his country.

278. And Henry, the prince of Champagne, and captain of the host of Richard, king of England, set his heart upon dwelling in the land of Judah ; and he was for eyes† unto the uncircumcised. And the chiefs of the host set him at their head, to be a mighty hero and a man of war ; and they made him king over themselves, and gave him the daughter of the King Amalric to wife, whom

* i. e. Leopold treated Richard in a manner which was calculated to shorten his life. † Compare Numb. x. 31.

Conrad, the prince of Montferrat, had taken ; for her husband Conrad was slain in that year.

279. In those days, Guy sold the right of the government which he had in the land of Judah, unto Henry, king of England ; and he gave him the isle of Cyprus, which he took from the hand of the Yavanim, when he passed through. And this kingdom belonged unto Guy, and unto his seed, until the year one thousand four hundred and seventy. And they dwelled therein two hundred and seventy-five years ; and others came and drove them away, and dwelled there in their stead.

280. And the uncircumcised fought once more against Saladin ; and they fell before him slain to the ground ; and they turned the neck and not the face. And he drove them away by his strength and his wisdom from all the land of Judah and the land of Aram, and reigned over all the east country. And also against Emanuel, the emperor of the Yavanim, he fought before his coming to Jerusalem, and took him alive ; and the fame of Saladin went throughout all the earth.

281. And Saladin had two sons, the name of the first-born was Seif-ed-din*, and the name of the second was Miralin†. And his time drew nigh that he must die ; and he made Seif-ed-din king in the

* שאפָאַדִיןו.

† מִירָאַלִין.

land of Judah and the land of Aram, and Miralin in the land of Egypt. And it came to pass, at the time of his dying, that he called his servant who was his standard-bearer, and said unto him, “Thou art my servant, the most faithful in my house, who didst go with me in all my battles all my days of vanity*. Take the under-garment whereupon they shall lay my body, and set it on a pole; and cry aloud continually in the streets of Damascus, ‘Behold and see, all ye nations, that the king of all the East taketh nothing away with him in his death! And nothing of all the labor which he hath performed under the sun goeth down after him save this under-garment!’” And he went out from him, and did according to all that he had said. And Saladin, the scourge and the destruction of the uncircumcised, died; and his sons buried him according as he had commanded them. And Seif-ed-din†, their uncle, arose against them, to withstand them, and took their country out of their hand.

282. In those days, in the year one thousand one hundred and ninety-five, came the Arabs into the land of Sphard‡ with a strong hand. And the King Alphonso went out against them; and he was smitten before them; and of the uncircumcised

* i. e. During my lifetime.—*O vanitas vanitatum, omnia vanitas!*

שָׁפָאָדִין

‡ Spain.

there fell slain to the ground about fifty thousand men in that battle.

283. In those days, when the King Henry, the prince of Champagne, who reigned instead of Guy over the uncircumcised in Ptolemais*, abode in the royal palace, he came nigh unto the window to look through, and he fell to the ground and died. And Philip, the king of Tzaphrath, and Richard, [לְגָן] king of England, wept over him, for he was the son of their sister Mary.

284. And it came to pass, in the year four thousand nine hundred and fifty-six, which is the year one thousand one hundred and ninety-six, that there was a Jew in the land of Austria†, whose name was Solomon; and this man was perfect and upright, fearing God‡ and working righteousness at all times§. And the duke appointed him over his tribute, and over all that he had ; and he had men-servants and maid-servants, Jews as well as strangers, a very great household §. And the uncircumcised set their heart upon going unto Jerusalem in that year ; and they gathered themselves together by thousands and tens of thousands, until

* טולומאידה. † אושטיה רובה. ‡ Job i. 1.

§ עשרה צדקה בכל עת. The word צדקה, δικαιοσύνη, is, by the rabbins and the modern Jews especially, used for alms-giving. The passage might accordingly be translated : *and he was in the habit of giving alms.*

|| Job. i. 3.

they left off counting*. And there was among these travellers one of Solomon's servants, who also offered himself willingly to go; and he stole from him twenty-four pieces of gold. And Solomon's wrath was kindled against him; and he put him in the prison-house. And it came to pass, on a day, which was the day of their calamity†, that his wife went into the house of their graven image, and cried with a loud voice concerning her husband, whom the Jew had put into the prison-house. And the bands‡ of Vienna arose, and came into his house, and killed him; and about fifteen souls they killed with him. And the duke heard of it, and his wrath was kindled. And he commanded, and they took two of the heads of the people who had done this great evil, and smote off their heads, and brought them down in blood unto the grave. But unto the rest of the people they did nothing, for they had done it in the integrity of their hearts; and he set not his heart against them.

285. What shall we say, and wherewith shall

* i. e. They could not be numbered.

† Perhaps Good-Friday is meant; but **יום נידויים**, *dies perniciei ipsorum* occurs in rabbinical writers, for *dies festus ipsorum, scilicet Gentilium et Christianorum*. Compare Deut. xxxii, 35; Job xxi. 17.

‡ **הנוצמלים**, *juncti*, probably means here, as in page 120, those who had united themselves to form a crusade. Perhaps, however, it may mean the companies of tradesmen, or guilds, at Vienna.

we justify ourselves before the Lord, when He discovereth the sins of the inhabitants of Nosa?* In the year four thousand nine hundred and fifty-seven, on the seventh day of the month Adar, a Hebrew, a foolish man, met a Gentile girl and slaughtered her *and cast her* into the midst of a well, before the face of the sun, for he raved with madness. And the uncircumcised arose, and killed him ; and the rest of the Jews also they slew with the edge of the sword, and laid hand on the prey, and brought the men out into the street and put them on wheels, to deride the people of the living God. And on the eleventh day of the month, on the Sabbath-day, they seized the mother of the murderer, and her brothers ; and they buried her, while her soul was yet within her, for the holiness of her Creator ; and her brothers they put upon the wheels. And a Jewess, with her three daughters, they forced, and cast them away from the God of Israel ; and the rest, the bishop fined one hundred and fifty gold pieces ; and as for the Jews who dwelled round about them, the bishop and the nobles fined them and took much riches from them. And it came to pass, after some more days, that the Jews gave a bribe ; and they took them off from the wheels and brought them away in a ship unto the

lower part of the city of Dante*, and buried them next to the righteous who had been buried there, in the year four thousand eight hundred and fifty-one. And the Jewess who was forced, returned unto her nation and unto her God before Purim†. And these are the names of those who died in that slaughter:—Rabbi Isaac, the chanter; Rabbi Samuel, and his son Nathan; and Rabbi Isaac, the son of Simeon; and Rabbi Samuel, the son of Rabbi Natruni; and Baruch, the son of Joseph. Give them, O Lord, according to their deeds! Rabbi Ephraim, the son of Jacob, has brought this into his account; and he saith farther, “Blessed be the Lord, the God of Israel, who hath redeemed my soul from trial! for I was also one of the inhabitants of Nosa; and I came three days before the evil unto Cologne; and my life was unto me for a prey. Only that they came into my house, and took all they would of my property and wealth: my Creator will restore my loss.”

286. And in the year four thousand nine hundred and fifty-eight, Philip, the king of Tzarpinth, allowed the Jews to dwell in Paris, against the will of the nation; but they did not lengthen out their days there; for they cast them out a second time into another country, as it is now.

* דָּנְטִי.

† i. e. The Feast of Lots, in commemoration of the events related in Est. ix.

287. And in the year four thousand nine hundred and sixty-two, which is the year one thousand two hundred and two, many of the uncircumcised offered themselves willingly to go unto Jerusalem. And they went unto Venice, but could not pass over the sea ; and many of them died ; and the rest returned back with shame.

288. Also those days were days of destruction*. And of them, saith the Eben Bochēn (that is to say, The Touch-stone) : “Twice was this evil in the land; when the wicked flourished, they arose against us to destroy us ; they did cast lots upon the holy seed in their wrath ; they killed amongst us, the old man with the child ; the young man with the damsel ; the suckling with the grey-headed man ; and much people died of Israel, in the day when the wicked cut off our hosts. It was the Lord’s doing, because we had forsaken his law, and the Lord would not forgive: there was pain in all loins, when we heard these, who were then taken to die, and when they bowed down to be killed, hallow the Holy One of Jacob : for the confession of his Name they were counted as sheep for the slaughter. In the day of the great slaughter some did not fear ; nor were they moved in the day of great slaughter, in the cloudy and dark day : may it not be joined

* Baptism.

unto the days of the year !* On that day some of my people changed their worship†, and chose new gods‡ ; they could not restrain themselves when their sons were brought out to be killed. Their hearts were divided, and they made a new covenant with them ; at first they were forced, but in the end it was with free-will.”

289. And thus, for the second time calamity came upon calamity, so that the prince listened to false accusations against the congregation of Israel ; our enemies, which are many, brought accusations§ against the Jews ; and they said unto him : “ We have found poisoned water, and the land is destroyed, through the sins of Jacob.” All this was because they had taken counsel with one consent to destroy. And it came to pass, when they spake of it daily, that the report was heard very eagerly, and spread abroad ; and the people prevailed ; and the word of the king regent came forth, and commanded to search after the truth, to give him sight into the matter, for he could do no more. Then did the nations of the country swallow us up alive ; and the king and his throne were guiltless.

* Job. iii. 6.

† Jer. ii. 11.

‡ Judges v. 8. i. e. They became idolaters.

§ אכלו קורצון דיהודא. This phrase occurs in Dan. iii. 8., vi. 24 [Hebrew text v. 25], and means, literally, “They devoured, or ate up, the cause of the Jews.”

Who has heard of the misery of Israel, and the oppression wherewith the oppressors oppressed them, to bring forth from their lips things which had not come into their hearts, and his soul would not choose strangling ?* Who has seen the wrongs of Jacob, the hard chastisement and torments, the like of which have not been done in the whole earth, and among all nations ? God had discovered the sins of Israel to pour out his wrath upon them, and the fire of the Lord was burning among them ; the saints of the Most High came every one with his household into the flaming fire, as a bridegroom coming out of his chamber, they came out from the prison-house to hallow their Father in heaven. O God of vengeance, shine forth to avenge the blood of thy servants, which was shed because they had done no wrong !

290. These two persecutions passed during the course of one year. It was hardly one year after the first persecution, when, at the end of twelve months, the second hastened to come : and there came yet a third, when the perfect and Holy Law of God was burned, besides the heavy captivity ; and the hatred of the truth against us was strong : I am weary of bearing their hatred† and their great envy, for it is hard. Gentiles came to me into my tent, to plunder my property ; ten men of divers tongues

* Job. vii. 15.

. † The hatred of the persecutors.

of the Gentiles, whose tongue I hear and do not understand, lay hold of the skirt of a Jew, to strip him of his garment from off him* ; and when he maketh his face bold, seeking to avoid the shame, the Gentile will run with his sword unto him to lay hold on his neck†, unless the Lord should protect. Therefore, O Thou Holy One of Israel, who art high and exalted, behold and see our pain ; for thy sake we are killed every day, we are counted as sheep for the slaughter‡; plead our cause for thy great and terrible Name's sake ! Why should the nations say, “Where is now their God ?”§ Let us give thanks unto thy great Name. Selah !

291. And on the thirtieth day of the month of May, there was for three days a great earthquake in the east country, the like of which had not been from the time of Uzziah, king of Judah. [ל] There was heard a great voice, so that whosoever heard it, his ears did tingle || ; and there fell a great part of Acco and the court of the king's palace to the ground ; and much people died. And Tyre fell utterly ; and also the fortified city of Arkas¶ fell unto the foundation thereof, and also the greatest part

* Rabbi Joseph, not being born till A.D. 1469, is here evidently quoting the words of some preceding rabbi; probably Rabbi Ephraim mentioned in p. 220.

† לאהו בערפו. ¶ Ps. xliv. 22. § Ps. lxxix. 10.

|| Compare 1 Sam. iii. 11., 2 Kings xxi. 12., Jer. xix. 3.

¶ אַרְקָאָשׁ.

of Tripolis fell : it was the travail of the world, under which much people died. And there was a famine in the land, which yielded not its increase* in those days. Tell it unto your children ; for what the sword had left, the earthquake did devour ; and what the earthquake left, the famine did devour ; and what the famine left, the plague did devour. And the uncircumcised could no more withstand in that district, for they fought from heaven†, to cast the uncircumcised away from the territory of Israel : then did the Lord fulfil his word; which he spake by his servant Moses, saying, "And your enemies shall become desolate thereon." And eighty-eight years the uncircumcised dwelt in that country ; and He cast them away unto another country, as it is at this day.

292. And these are the kings who reigned over the uncircumcised in the land of Judah. And Godfrey reigned, and the name of his city was Bouillon‡ ; and he died, and Baldwin, his brother, reigned in his stead ; and he died, and Baldwin de Bourg reigned in his stead ; and he died, and Fulk, his son-in-law, reigned in his stead ; and he died, and his son Baldwin reigned in his stead ; and he died, and his son Amalric reigned in his stead ; and he died, and his son Baldwin the leper,

* Lev. xxvi. 20.

† Judges v. 20.

בָּולְגַנִּיא.

reigned after him ; and he made Baldwin, the son of his sister, king after him, in his lifetime; and he was a youth : and they died, and Guy reigned after them ; and the name of his wife was Sybilla, the daughter of the King Amalric, the mother of the youth. In those days was the country taken. And the chief captains of the hosts made Henry of Champagne king over themselves in his stead ; and he fell through a window at Ptolemais, and died.

293. And Philip, after his return unto Tzarphath, did great things for the increase of their law* ; and he was a good man in the eyes of the nations, and knew how to govern a country. And Philip died in the year one thousand two hundred and nineteen, and his son Lewis reigned in his stead. And Lewis walked in the ways of his father, and fought against the Vaudois†, who were in his eyes like heretics ; and he made them servants unto tribute.

294. In the year when Philip died, there gathered themselves together much people, to go unto Jerusalem. And when Koreddin, the eldest son of Saladin‡, heard of it, he became afraid, and was greatly distressed. And he commanded, and they cast down the walls of Jerusalem, and its

* לרבוי דתם, means here, for the propagation of Christianity.

‡ קוריאונטש.

‡ Koreddin was, according to other writers, the nephew of Saladin.

houses, to the ground, to the foundation thereof; there was nothing left but the ruins of the sanctuary. And the church of the Nazarenes he did not cast down; for they entreated him; and he accepted their persons in this matter. In that year, the Nazarenes took Damietta*; and after a few days more, they sold it unto the Turks, for the uncircumcised who were in their hands: and they went every one unto his possession.

295. And Lewis, king of Tzaphrath, also purposed to fight against the Albigenses†, for they were heretics in his eyes. And as he was gathering together his hosts, he died suddenly by Montpensier‡. And these are the names of those who were born unto him:—the first was called Lewis, after his own name; and the second, Robert; the third, Alphonso; the fourth, Charles.

296. And Lewis reigned after him, for unto him belonged the right of the first-born; and the daughter of the prince of Narbonne became his wife; and unto Robert, his brother, he gave the dukedom of Artois §, and the Atrebati ||; and he gave unto him to wife the daughter of the count of Brabant, And unto Alphonso, he gave the daughter of the

* דמיאתָה.

‡ אלְבִינְגַשִׁי.

† מונפְנִינְשִׁיָּאִרִי.

§ אַוְרֶגְנֵיָה.

|| אַטְרֵבָאַטִי.
Artois is situated in the ancient district of the
Atrebati.

count of Toulouse; and unto Charles, he gave the sister of his wife; thinking that the one should be count of Toulouse, and the other the prince of Narbonne.

297. And he went to fight against the English; and he arrayed a battle against them: and they turned their back, and fell before him slain to the ground; and he seized many of the princes who were enemies unto him on that day. And he builded the church which was called Santo*; and he put therein a spear and a napkin† to be preserved‡. And they say, that it was the spear wherewith their messiah was pierced, and the napkin which they put over his face at his death, which were sent to him as a present by Baldwin, the emperor of Constantinople; and it was unto them an abomination § until this day.

298. And unto Alphonso he gave the earldom of Auvergne || and Poitou; and unto Charles the seignory of Maine ¶: and he made them houses**.

299. This is that Charles who took the king-

* שאנתו. † ספונ, abstorsorium. ‡ Exod. xvi. 33, 34.

§ לחרבה. Rabbi Joseph means to say, an object of worship which he holds in abomination. ¶ ארבירניאנסי ||

¶ סינומאנינשו, Cenomanum, Le Mans, the principal town of the Cenomanensis Ager, or Maine. Charles was styled duke of Anjou. Anjou borders upon Maine, and probably, the dukedom comprehended Maine, as well as Anjou.

** i. e. He established their prosperity. See Exod. i. 21.

dom of Sicily; and they call him Charles the First until this day. In those days, Lewis became sick unto death; and he vowed to go to fight against the Hagarenes in the land of Israel, if the sickness should leave him. And Lewis recovered, and returned to his former strength. And he gave the management of the government unto his mother and his brother Alphonso, and gathered soldiers in multitudes, and turned his face towards the east. And Pope Innocent the Fourth met him when he was yet at Lyons. And he cast himself at his feet, saying, "Deliver me from the hand of the Emperor Frederic the Second, who has driven me away from abiding in my possession at Rome*; and he has cast me out into another country, as it is at this day." And Lewis accepted his person in this thing, and spake unto his heart; and they went both together. And he brought him back unto his office as at the first; and he went on his journey, passing over the sea towards the sun rising. And he took Damietta by force, which is a mother-city†, in the land of Egypt. And there came upon him and his troops miseries and afflictions, and divers troubles in that war. And

* Compare 1 Sam. xxvi. 19.

† i. e. To the East. Compare Numb. xxxiv. 15, and Joshua i. 15.

‡ i. e. A metropolis.

the sultan went out against him, and arrayed a battle against him ; and he took him and his brother Charles alive, and led them away in chains unto Egypt. And they gave back unto him Damietta, and money, as a ransom for their souls, according as the sultan had demanded of them ; and they went away free, and returned unto Tzaphrath with shame. And it came to pass, after his return, that Lewis built many churches unto Baal, for the brotherhood of the priests, and gave them kingly gifts.

300. And it came to pass, after some days, that Lewis gathered together a very great host by the advice of the pope, and went into Africa, in ships, in the year one thousand two hundred and twenty-seven, and his three sons with him ; and these were their names ;—Philip, John, and Peter : and he did great things in that circuit ; but ‘deceit roasted not that which it took in hunting’* ; for the wrath of the Lord was kindled against them, and the plague began. And Lewis died near Tunis, before he had ended this war ; and they embalmed him, and brought him unto Tzaphrath, and his

* Proverbs xii. 27. This verse is translated in the Bible, “*The slothful man roasteth not that which he took in hunting.*” But the word רָמֵד, is here taken by Rabbi Joseph in its primary meaning, ‘deceit,’ for ‘the deceitful man.’

bowels were buried in Sicily, in the church of Montreal*.

302. And his first-born son, Philip, reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand two hundred and seventy. And he strengthened himself, and was a son of valor, and drew not back his right hand, when he was in the land of his enemies; and he besieged Tunis many days. Also Charles, the king of Sicily, went thither to assist his brother Lewis with a strong hand. And it came to pass, when Lewis was dead, that they made peace with the king of Tunis, according as it was good and pleasant in their sight; since he brought them the tribute every year. And Philip returned unto Tzaphrath in the year one thousand two hundred, and seventy-two. [לה]

303. In those days, while they were besieging Tunis, Bendigar† reigned in Egypt; and he oppressed the uncircumcised, who were in Aram and Armenia. And when he found Antioch desolate of inhabitants, he commanded, and they pulled it down unto its foundation. And he fought against the men of Ashur‡; but they slew him; and he died in Damascus. And Sicily revolted against Charles, while he was yet at Tunis; and they called Peter, king of Aragon§, and he was

* מונטראל.

+ בִּינְדִּינָאַר.

‡ אַשּׁוֹר, Assyria.

§ אַרְאָנוֹן.

king unto them. And Charles went unto the pope who had made him king over Sicily, and told him all that had happened unto him; and it grieved him much. And he wrote unto King Peter; but he would not hearken: and he wrote unto him the second time, and excommunicated him: then he went away from them. And the government was confirmed in the hand of Charles at that time.

303. And Sicily became full of wickedness, because of the French who lay with the women; and the wrath of the inhabitants of the country was kindled against them; and they conspired together. And it came to pass one day, that they gave the signal, and slew them as one man; and utterly dispersed them*, and there was not one left. And they called the second time the king of Aragon, and made him king over themselves. And Charles died at Naples, and had no children.

304. In that year, when Philip returned unto Tzaphrath, the Pope Gregory held a general council in Lyons, and Palæologus†, the emperor of Constantinople, came also thither; and they received him with gladness. They spake there to take counsel about their faith; for they walk in darkness, and with darkness shall their name

* Numb. xi. 32.

פְּלִיאוֹלוֹגָנוֹ †

be covered* : they grope for the wall like the blind ;
they are in desolate places as dead men†.

305. And Philip gathered together soldiers, and went to fight against Pedro, king of Aragon, about the kingdom of Sicily, which he had taken from the hand of Charles, his uncle ; and he took a good portion from the diadem of that kingdom. And it came to pass upon a day, that his soul departed suddenly‡ and he died. And these are the names of those who were born unto him :— Philip, by his first wife ; and Charles, the prince of Valois§, by the second ; and Lewis, the prince of Evreux|| ; and Margaret, the wife of the king of England¶ ; and Blanche**, the wife of the duke of Austria††. And Philip, his first-born, reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand two hundred and eighty-five. And they called him The Fair ; for he was of a fair countenance and goodly stature : he fought against Edward††, king of England, but prospered not in war. And he hated Boniface§§, the pope, in his heart. And he commanded, and they issued a proclamation throughout his kingdom, that no one should send any silver or gold unto Rome. And he sent Sciarra Colonna|||, the chief

* Ecclesiastes vi. 4.

† Isaiah lix. 10.

הָאִבּוֹרָאִצְנָשׁוּ or הָאִבּוֹדָאִצְנָשׁוּ || . וְאַלְיָשָׁאוּ § . זָבֵד ‡

¶ The second wife of Edward I.

אָוְדוֹאֲרָדוּ †† . אֶבְשְׁטְרִיאָה †† . בִּיאָנָקָה .

שָׁאָרָה קִילּוֹנָה |||| . בְּוּנִיפָּאַצְיָאוּ § .

of his host, secretly into Italy ; and he gathered together his host, and his friends, and companions, and led them on unto Anagni*. And he seized Boniface, the pope, in his house and within his own walls, and bound him, and brought him unto Rome ; and the pope died there in misery and in want of every thing.

306. In his days, went the King Asah†, the sultan of Egypt, with a strong hand, and besieged Tripolis ; and he took it by force. And many of the uncircumcised fell in that battle slain unto the ground. And they utterly burned the city ; and they pulled down the houses ; their eyes had no compassion upon them. And he went unto Sidon and Beyrouth ; and the Lord gave them into his hand, and he did unto them according as they had done unto Tripolis ; and he returned unto his country in the year one thousand two hundred and ninety.

307. In those days, Pope Clement the Fifth removed his papal throne from Rome unto Avignon‡, which is in Tzaphrath, in the year one thousand three hundred and five ; and the popes dwelled there seventy-five years..

308. In those days, the Lord raised Othman, the grandson of Shah §, the Turk ; and his

* אַנְגָנִי.

† אַסָּה.

לְאַבְנִיָּה.

§ אֹוֹתְמוֹן בֶּן זִיחָן.

family was the least*. And he was a prosperous man, a valiant hero, a warlike man, and learned in science. And this man became very great ; and he gathered together soldiers, and fought against the uncircumcised, who were nigh unto him ; and he ate daily the prey of his enemies. And whithersoever he turned he did mischief ; and he waxed great and went forward, and increased until he became exceeding great. And he took fenced cities on the coast of the Great Sea, and made them servants unto tribute. And he went also unto the great city Sivas†, formerly called Sebasta, and took it ; and his fame went throughout the whole earth : He is the father of the Ottomans unto this day.

309. And King Philip begat three sons ; and these are their names : — Lewis, who is called Hutin, king of Navarre‡ ; and Philip, the count of Poitou ; and Charles, the count of La Marck §. And he reigned twenty-three years, and died an old man and full of years ; and his son Lewis reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand three hundred and thirteen. And it came to pass, when he reigned, that his heart became proud, and he

* ומשפחתו חצעריה, Othman's family was the least whether as to number or nobility.

אושנו מלך נבארה ‡. שיואש אשר שיבאשתה †.
אלוף המארקיה §.

took some of his father's friends, and of his servants, and brought them down in blood unto the grave. And he allowed the Jews to live in the cities of his kingdom, for they found favor in his eyes; and he accepted their persons, and made a covenant with them. And Lewis died, and his son John* reigned in his stead; and he was a youth. And his uncle Philip was his nursing father; but the child died at the end of twenty days.

§10. And his uncle Philip reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand three hundred and fifteen. And Philip had three daughters; and they became wives unto the duke of Burgundy, and unto the duke of Nevers†, and unto the dauphin of Vienne‡, and he had two sons. And he went the way of all the earth; and his brother Charles reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand three hundred and twenty-two; and he prospered not in his reign. And it came to pass, after some days, that he fell sick and died; and his wife was left: and behold she was pregnant, and the eyes of all the nobles were upon her, to see if she would bear a strong heir. And there was strife between them; for their souls longed to reign until he should be grown up who was in the womb of the

* יְהוָנָן.

† גַּיּוֹרֶשׁ.

‡ וְלִדּוֹלְפֵינוּ וַיַּאֲגִינְשֵׁי;

Delphino Viennensi.

pregnant woman. And among those that strove, were Charles of Valois, and Edward, king of England; and the nobles chose Charles, and he was unto them a shepherd. And Charles died before she brought forth; and it came to pass at the time when she brought forth, that there was a female child in her womb*.

312. And the nobles chose Philip, the son of the deceased Charles†, and made him king over them in the year one thousand three hundred and twenty-seven: and in the sight of the king of England this was evil. And this Philip the Fifth‡ was a valiant hero; and his government was very firmly established.

312. And the Turk Othman reigned over the country of Asia Minor twenty-eight years, and he died; and his son Orkan§ reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand three hundred and twenty-eight. And he walked in the ways of his father, and his heart became very proud, as he was wiser than he to calculate plans how to

* The rabbi has confounded the somewhat similar cases of Philip V. and his brother Charles IV. and mis-stated the accounts of the latter. Both reigned; and both left only female issue. On the birth of the daughter of Charles IV. the succession was contested by Philip of Valois, Charles of Navarre, and Edward of England.

† Charles of Valois, brother of Philip the Fair.

‡ Rightly, Philip the Sixth.

§ אורקאנה.

obtain the cities which were nigh unto him. And he was of a liberal and magnanimous heart towards the host, and withheld nothing from them that they desired: and so they began to obtain a name among the heroes who were of old, men of renown. And he fought after wise plans; and he was an artist and an inventor, to make destructive instruments, and battering rams to cast down walls, as at this day. And he took unto himself to wife the daughter of the [לו] king of Carmania, which was formerly called Cilicia; and he became higher than his father, and his government was lifted up.

* 313. And Edward, king of England, came unto Tzaphrath with a strong hand, saying, that unto him belonged the right of the government. And King Philip went out against him, and arrayed a battle against him; and Edward was smitten before him, and returned back with shame. And they did so again and again, whensoever Edward returned unto Tzaphrath to fight. And near Calais* Philip destroyed and brake to pieces the strength of the English in ships, and the rest returned unto their country†.

* אֶשְׁקָלֹתָה.

† The circumstances of this war are here represented as in favor of the French, while it is well known, that during the earlier

314. And when the time of Humbert, the dauphin of Vienne, drew nigh unto death, the king said unto him, “Behold, thou goest the way of all the earth: and now this is the kindness which thou shouldst do unto me; set thy house in order, and give the dauphiniate unto Charles, the son of my first-born son, as an inheritance.” And Humbert said unto him, “The Lord hearken between me and thee, if I do not this day according to thy words, my Lord, O king.” From that day, and afterwards, the dauphiniate has belonged unto the kings of France, or unto their first-born sons until this day.

315. And it came to pass, in the year five thousand one hundred and eight, which is the second year of King Philip, there was a great plague, from the rising of the sun unto the going down thereof; and there was no city which was too high for it*, as it is written in the book of Emek Rephaim of Rabbi Chaim Galipapat. And there was a great cry from one end of the world unto the other, the like whereof never was. In the city which went out by a thousand, there were but one hundred left; and of that which went out by one hundred, only ten were left, at that time; and for one who

campaigns of Edward, the English arms were attended with the most brilliant success.

* i. e. Exempt from it.

גָּלִילְיָה פְּנַחַד

died or was sick of the Jews, there died and sickened one hundred of the people of the land. And they clothed themselves with jealousy*.

316. In those evil days, there was no king nor prince. Were it not that the Lord was with us, there would not have been left of the Jews in the kingdoms of Aragon and Catalonia one spared or remaining. And they wickedly accused them with wrong accusations, and said, "Because of the wickedness of Jacob was this. They have brought the deadly poison into the world: from them came this great evil upon us." And it came to pass, when they said this horrible thing, that the Jews feared greatly, and afflicted their souls with fasting, and cried unto God. And it was a time of misery, of grief, and of rebuke, unto the house of Jacob in that year. And it came to pass on the Sabbath-day, at evening, that they arose against them at Barcelona, and killed of them about twenty souls, and laid hands on the prey, and there was none to say, "Leave off." While they were fighting, the Lord caused it to thunder and to rain an overwhelming shower and flames of fire; and our adversaries were amazed: the Lord confounded their speech. And the nobles and the great men of the city went and saved the rest from

* i. e. The French envied the Jews for their better health.

† i. e. Lightning.

their hand ; but did not retain strength to save them from the thunder and rain ; for they were many who rose up against them, and said, “ Let us destroy them from being a nation. The Lord do good unto those that are good, and as for such as turn aside unto their crooked ways, may the Lord lead them forth with the workers of iniquity !”* Amen.

317. And it came to pass, after some days, they rose up against the Jews of Sirbira†, and killed about eighteen souls, and laid hands on the prey. And the rest fled for their lives. And they afflicted their souls with fasting, and spread sackcloth and ashes for many‡.

318. And it came to pass, after three days, that they arose against the Jews on the tenth day of Ab, and on the day when they afflicted their souls, and also the inhabitants of Tarigah§ rose up, and slew many among the Jews ; and there were more than three hundred souls lost ; and they cast them into an empty pit, and laid hands on the prey. And the rest fled secretly for their lives, unto the houses of their acquaintance, for bribes¶, until

* Ps. cxxv. 4, 5.

† Probably Seville.

‡ i. e. They mourned for the fate of many.

§ טָרִינָה, perhaps Tarragona.

¶ בְּמַתָּן בְּסֶתֶר, i. e. They found admission on the payment of money.

the fury was overpast. And they were left naked of all that they had, but were not ashamed.

319. Also against the inhabitants of Solsonah* and Salkenah†, by reason of our sins, the feller went up; and they of great stature were cut off; the ancient hills were thrown down; and they killed in those two places about three hundred souls. See, O Lord, and behold, and plead their cause! Also in the kingdom of Provence, the Jews drank the cup of astonishment ‡ in those days. And when this evil report reached the city of Monson§, the Jews became amazed because Israel was shorn; and they proclaimed fasts, and girded themselves with sackcloth, and prayed unto God. And they strengthened themselves in their streets, in their courts, and in their towers; and the night was unto them for watching, and by day their work was hindered. And they went not out from the streets of the Jews abroad, until the men were dead who sought their lives. And in Lerida ||, and in Iviskah¶, and in all the places where the Jews had a wall, they gathered to themselves gates and bars, and withheld for their lives, and set watchmen, until He that sitteth in heaven looked down upon them; and the Lord delivered them. And in Ashkenaz, they accused

* שולשונה. † שלקונח. ‡ See Ps. lx. 3; Ez. xxiii. 33.
§ מונסן. ¶ לירידה. ¶ אוואישקה, perhaps Iviza.

them of casting poison into wells; and they chastened them with rods and with thorns, and burned them with fire. May the Lord avenge the blood of his servants that was shed! Amen. Amen.

320. And King Philip did things in war and in time of peace, worthy to be remembered; and he reigned twenty-three years in Tzaphath, and he became sick and died, when he was fifty-seven years old. And his son John reigned in his stead, in the year one thousand three hundred and fifty.

321. In those days Orkan*, the Turk, fought against Michael Palaeologus, the emperor of Constantinople. And he took the great city Bour-sat, where the kings of Bithynia† resided afore-time; and the archers shot, and slew him in that war. And the great Turk Orkan, fell sick and died; and his son Amurath reigned in his stead.

322. And Amurath, the son of Orkan, the son of Othman, was subtle as a serpent; and his ears were attentive to hear what the day bringeth forth. For he was very desirous to spread out his wings, and to enlarge his borders; and time did not hinder any thing that his soul longed for. And there was peace between Amurath and the emperor of Con-

* אֹרְקָן בּוֹרְשִׁיָּה † בִּיטְינִיאָה

stantinople ; and they both made a covenant between themselves. And the princes of Yavan revolted against the emperor ; and Mark Zarnobichio, the prince of Bulgaria, helped them. And the emperor asked Amurath for assistance. And Amurath delayed not to send twelve thousand Turks to assist him. And it came to pass, when they came, that the emperor went out against the princes who rebelled against him. And they were smitten before him ; and they turned their neck, and some of them fell by the edge of the sword ; and the rest fled for their lives : and the war ceased. And the emperor sent seven thousand Turks unto their country, and their brethren were left with him to watch in his work* ; and they remained there ; and thus they began to come into the land of Yavan, to be with the adversaries of the uncircumcised as at this day ; and all this was the Lord's doing ; for by him are the works weighed. And the chiefs of the hosts spake unto Amurath, saying, “ We came into the land of Yavan, and verily it is fat, and a very good country, and of wide space ; only that the heart of the people which dwelleth therein is divided.” And he thought in his heart, “ This is the time to make me a place and a name.”

* i. e. To wait upon him, and to be watchful in his service.

323. And Richard*, the king of England, came unto Tzarphath to war; and the king [ל'] John went out against him with a strong hand. And it came to pass while he was fighting against them, that the English smote him, and surrounded him, and took him alive; and they bound him with chains and led him away with them. And it came to pass at the end of four years, that they made peace between themselves, and he returned unto his country. And he begat three sons; and these were their names: — Charles, who reigned after him; and Philip, the prince of Tournay; and Lewis, the duke of Anjou and Berri.

324. In those days did Amurath purpose in his heart to go unto the land of Yavan, to take vengeance in behalf of the emperor on his enemies. And he gathered soldiers; and they who were numbered of them were sixty thousand men, all men of valor; and they came unto the ford of Gallipoli, in the year one thousand three hundred and sixty-three. And two ships of the men of Genoa brought them over; the one belonged unto the family Intriānī†, and the other unto the family Iscoarzah Pia‡; and they gave them a hire of sixty thousand gold pieces, a gold piece for each person. And they went into all the land of Yavan to

* Edward, or rather his son, the Black Prince, seems to be intended. † אַינְטְּרִיאָנִי. ‡ אַיסְקוֹאֶרְצָה פֵּיאָה.

plunder and spoil, whithersoever their hearts desired ; and there was none to deliver out of their hand ; and their cry went up to heaven.

325. And John, the king of Tzarphath, died, after time had brought the arrows of his troubles into their quiver*, in the year one thousand three hundred and sixty-four ; and his son Charles reigned in his stead. And he was called unto Savoy, and Charles went unto Barig†, after he was anointed, and he gave unto his brother Philip, the dukedom of Burgundy. And Philip took Margaret, the daughter of Lewis, duke of Flanders, for a wife, and he was unto Lewis as a son ; for he had no children.

326. And Amurath, the Turk, took Gallipoli and the cities which were nigh unto the strait‡, in the year one thousand three hundred and sixty-six. And they made ships to bring over the horses and the footmen, and brought some over daily. And they increased much ; and whithersoever they turned, they did mischief, saying, “They were the enemies of the emperor.” And he took also Philippopolis, and he passed through the whole district of Servia ; and the nations were terrified before them.

327. And King Charles made a statute and

* i. e. After having at last enjoyed a peaceful reign.

† Either a corruption of *Paris*, which the Italians call *Parigi*, or of *Barege*, the ancient *Valletria*. ‡ The Hellespont.

ordinance concerning the publicans*; and he gathered silver and gold without number, more than all the kings who had preceded him. And he made also statutes and ordinances, concerning the management of the government, if the king should die without heirs of full age; and he made them as statutes in France. And Charles died after he had made statutes and ordinances, for the establishment of the kingdom. And he put his house in order, and died in the year one thousand three hundred and sixty-eight. And he had two sons, Charles and Lewis. Lewis was duke of Orleans; and Valentina†, the sister of Philip Visconti, the duke of Milan, became his wife.

328. And Charles reigned after him while he was a youth; and Lewis, the duke of Anjou, his uncle, was as a nursing father unto him; for so had his father Charles commanded before his death. And the King Charles turned not from the counsel of his uncle Lewis until he was grown up, either to the right or to the left, according as his father had commanded.

329. And it came to pass on a day, that Charles went out, while he was yet excellent as the cedars†, to go to hunt in the forest Silvanito,

* i. e. The farmers of the taxes.

גָּלִינְטִינָה

† i. e. While he was yet in his prime; in allusion, probably, to his subsequent incapability. See Cant. v. 15.

and they found a stag, and caught it; and there was an iron ring round his neck; and there was engraven upon it, “The emperor has given it unto me;” or, “A gift of the emperor.” From that day, and afterwards, he bore upon his banner and his weapons of war, a stag and a golden ring. In his days, the Pope Clement made the sixth laws of the Annates*.

330. In those days, there united themselves Lazarus Despota, the prince of Servia, and Mark, the prince of Bulgaria, and many princes from Albania. And they gathered together soldiers, every one according to the power of his hand. And they went out to fight against Amurath, and put the battle in array against him; but they were smitten before him, and fell slain to the ground. And Lazarus Despota was taken alive; and they led him away with them; and they brought him down in blood unto the grave. And Amurath took the district of Bulgaria from the hand of the uncircumcised at that time, which is the year one thousand three hundred and seventy. And one of the captives heard that his master Lazarus, the prince of Servia, was dead, and it grieved him much, even to his heart. And it came to pass, one day, that he said, “I will die this day with Amurath, who has killed my master.”

* חאנאט.

And he drew nigh to him, and took a sword, and thrust it into his belly ; and they both died at that time. And Amurath reigned twenty-three years, and went down in blood to the grave in the year one thousand three hundred and seventy-three ; and his son Bajazet reigned in his stead. And Bajazet arose against Soliman, his brother, and killed him ; and the government was confirmed in his hand. And Bajazet was a valiant hero ; he weighed the path of his feet, and they have called him Hildrin* Bajazet until this day.

331. And it came to pass, after the death of Amurath, his father, that he gathered soldiers ; and went against Mark, the prince of Bulgaria, to avenge the death of his father. And he set a battle in array near the place where his father was killed, and Mark was smitten before him ; and Mark, and the nobles who were with him, fell slain to the ground in that battle. And Bajazet, the Turk, took all the fenced cities which were left in Bulgaria at that time. And it came to pass, after some more days, that he passed on by the way of Bosnia ; and thus trembling came into Hungary and into Walachia† ; and in Albania he laid up his carriage‡, and his eye had no compassion upon them ; and he took the captives and the prey, according to all that his soul desired, and

* חילדרין. † באלקיה. ‡ כליו, i. e. his baggage.

sent them unto his country ; and he took the whole country of Yavan, and made the inhabitants servants unto tribute. He arrived at the great city of Constantinople, and besieged it many days.

332. And the emperor went unto Tzaphrath, and prayed before the king and the nobles, saying, “ The children are come to the birth, but there is no strength to bring forth ; and behold, your eyes see it, therefore, bring ye help unto me : ” and the king spake kindly unto his heart, and comforted him ; and said unto him, “ Fear not, nor be dismayed ; for thy people is like unto my people this day ; ” and he went away from him in peace.

333. And King Charles sent John, the prince of Nevers, the chief of his host, and with him many nobles and honorable men of the chiefs of the hosts which were in Tzaphrath, and with them a very great host ; and those that were numbered of them were one thousand French horsemen, besides the light horsemen, who were added to them ; and they went the way unto Hungary, and joined themselves unto the King Sigismund. And they came by the way of Servia to assist the prince, the Despota, with a strong hand. And they encamped against Nicopolis, and besieged it ; but they could not prevail against it, for the Turks delivered it out of their hand. And when the Turk Bajazet heard thereof, he gathered together soldiers

in multitudes, horsemen and footmen, and went away from the city of Constantinople, and went against the uncircumcised ; and they remained in their place. And his swift horsemen ran hither and thither to make observation* ; and the French who moved in the front, went out against them, and slew them, and smote them in pieces with the edge of the sword. [מְלָ]

334. And their heart became very proud, and they said, “ Let us remove and go, for God has given them into our hand.” And they hearkened not unto the voice of the leaders ; they would not stay until Sigismund, and the host of the Hungarians, and the Germans, and the Servians, should come up, saying, “ These are the words of Sigismund, lest the French should be honored against our enemies this day :” and the chiefs could not restrain their spirit, for they acted madly. And the prince of Vienne†, the bearer of the banner, went first. And this was the Lord’s doing toward them, for the Lord was angry with the French, and wroth with all their hosts ; he condemned them, and gave them over to the slaughter. And they blew the trumpets, and set there the battle in array, and slew among the Turks with a great slaughter. And they said, “ Aha, Aha ! ” But their joy was quickly gone,

* i. e. To reconnoitre.

† i. e. The Dauphin.

for the horsemen of Bajazet, and his host and chariots came against him in battle array, like the moon when she is new. And those that were numbered were sixty thousand horsemen, and footmen in multitudes ; and they enclosed them round about, before Sigismund came; and the French fell by the edge of the sword at that time. And the report was heard in the camp of Sigismund; and their heart melted away and became like water; and they fled, driven by the sword* at that time. And Sigismund, and the Prince Camray†, his uncle, fled in a ship, by the way of the river Danube, and the Turks shot sons of the quiver‡ after them. And about three hundred French, who were clothed in various-coloured garments, the Turks left alive, saying, “They are men of valor, and will give for their souls the ransom which we shall put upon them.” And Bajazet commanded; and they brought John, the prince of Nevers, the chief of the host, naked before him, for they had stripped him. And he said unto him, “I have accepted thy person, because thou art young and of a royal race. And now choose thee five of the captives, to dwell with thee; and the rest shall go down in blood unto the grave.” And he wept and cast himself

* Lev. xxvi. 36.

כMRIי.

‡ בָנִי אַשְׁפָתָם filii pharetræ eorum : i. e. arrows.

at his feet, and asked for the lord of Coucy, and Guy, the count of Tremouille, and Philip of Artois, and the Prince Dio, but the prince of Vienne*, he did not ask, for he had died in that battle; and he brought them unto him.

335. And Bajazet commanded the men of the host, saying, "Slay every one his man." And it came to pass, when they brought them out, that John, the prince of Nevers, recognized the Count Boucicault†, marshal of France, and he was like a giant; and he ran and bowed himself to the ground; and with tears upon his cheeks, he wept over him before Bajazet, and besought him, and said, "Do not kill him, for he is my brother." And he accepted his person also in this thing, and gave him unto him, and saved their lives from death. And the three hundred they slew with the edge of the sword before their eyes. And they brought these nobles unto Boursa‡, and gave them to eat and to drink, but not according to the hand of the king§. And they promised to give their ransom, that they might have their liberty. And Bajazet let them go after their desire, and sent them away to hunt; and they refreshed their souls. And James, the prince of

* i. e. The dauphin. † בוניאלאדו. ‡ בורשיהה § i. e. According to the state and manner of kings.

Matelon*, gave two hundred thousand pieces of gold for the ransom of their souls, and they went away free.

336. And in the camp of Bajazet were about three hundred thousand men; and there were found therein all sorts of tongues of the Gentiles. And the camp of the uncircumcised was about eighty thousand, and about twenty thousand horsemen were among them. And the Lord gave them into the hand of those that sought their lives at that time, which was the year one thousand three hundred and eighty-five, in the seventh month. In that year Lewis, the duke of Anjou, passed through Italy; and they made him king in Naples; and he died there without having prospered; and his men were left as the sheep which have no shepherd; and the rest returned unto Tzaphrath.

337. And in the year five thousand one hundred and forty-nine, which is the year one thousand three hundred and eighty-nine, in the first month, on the last day of Easter, the men of Prague, in Bohemia, surrounded the vineyard of the Lord of hosts, the house of Israel. All the people went thither, from every corner; and there was no feeble person among them: every one had his axe in his hand, like the hewers of wood; and they turned

* מאטילן.

their hand against them, and slew them. And the mountains trembled, and their corpses lay like dung in the midst of the streets. And they despised the Law of the Lord; and derided the speech of the Holy One of Israel : but by all this their wrath was not turned away. And they burned some of them with fire ; and they went even unto the sepulchres, and brought out from their graves those that slept in the dust. And they brake their memorial stones. And many of the wretched Jews laid hand on themselves, when they saw that evil was determined against them. And they killed every one his brother, and every one his neighbour, and every one his kinsman, and the tender wife of his bosom, and his sons, and his daughters, lest they should fall into the hands of the uncircumcised ; and their cry went up unto heaven. See, O Lord, and behold, and plead their cause ! And Rabbi Abigdor* made a lamentation over them in those days ; thou canst find it in his Selichah†.

338. And Bajazet, the Turk, returned after he had slain the French, and besieged Constantinople. And they destroyed the best part of it, and gave it to be plundered ; and there was none to deliver from their hand ; and the city was besieged. And

* אַבִינְדּוֹר † סְלִיחָה, *Forgiveness*, i.e. a prayer book.

when they saw that there was no strength in their hand, they said, “Our hope is lost; our wives and our children will be for a prey: is it not better to give the city into their hand, that we may save our souls from death?”

339. Whilst they were besieging the city, Tamerlane*, the Persian, the prince of Zagatait, came from the east country, and passed unto the district of Asia Minor, with a numerous people and with a strong hand; and the earth trembled at the sound of the prancings of his mighty men. And those that were numbered of them were four hundred thousand horsemen and six hundred thousand footmen. And when Bajazet heard it, he was afraid and much distressed. And he went away from the city, and hastened to go. And he came unto Angora†, and arrayed a battle against them; and he was smitten before them, and his men fell slain to the ground; but he was taken alive. And they bound him with golden fetters, and led him about in all the cities of Persia. And Tamerlane put him under his feet when he would mount his horse§, and he gathered his meat under his table; and Tamerlane afflicted him until the day of his death. And they that died in that war were two hundred thousand men, the like

*תָּמֶרְלָאָן.

+וְאַנְגָּרָה.

‡ אַנְגָּרָה. § בְּרַכְבָּו, in his riding, or when he would ride.

was not heard of from the time that Asia became a nation*.

340. And the children of Bajazet fled before Tamerlane, and dwelled in the land of Yavan, under the wings of the emperor; and he set a guard over them. And Tamerlane died, and Girigilibi†, the son of Bajazet, returned unto the district of Asia; and the nations received him, and he reigned over all the cities over which his father had reigned. And he gathered together both hosts and horsemen; and his fame was over all the earth. And it grieved Sigismund, the king of Hungary‡; and he went out against him with a strong hand. And Sigismund was smitten before him as in the days of Bajazet his father; and he fled for his life; and his men were slain with the edge of the sword in the plain of Salombis§, in the year one thousand four hundred and nine.

341. And Girigili fought against the despota of Servia, and in the borders of the emperor of Constantinople; and he remembered not the good which he had done him when he fled before Tamerlane. And he became sick, and died || in the

* מא זיתה אשיהה לנו.

† גיריגיליבי, called by other historians Soliman.

‡ אונגאריהה.

§ שאלאומבי, called by others Semindriah. This victory was gained by Moses, or Musa, after the death of Soliman.

|| Or rather he was murdered.

sixth year of his reign. And he had two sons; the name of the first-born was Orkan*, and the name of the [טל] second, Mohammed†. And Orkan sought to reign after his father, and he was a youth, and his uncle Moses killed him and reigned in his stead. And it came to pass, after another year, that Mohammed, the son of Girigilibi, arose against him, and slew him, and reigned on the throne of his fathers; and his government was firmly established. He fought against the Walachians‡, and passed through Nataolia, and took all the cities which Tamerlane had taken in the days of his father: and he drove away from thence many princes, and reigned in their stead. He removed the royal throne from Boursa, unto Adrianople, the mother-city of the land of Yavan. And he reigned fourteen years, and died in the year one thousand four hundred and nineteen. And according to this computation, it would appear that it was he who slew Sigismund, in the plain of Salombis, and not his father.

342. And his son, Sultan Amurath, reigned in his stead, and was a prosperous man. And Amurath took the daughter of George, the despota of Servia, to wife, besides his other wives; and he

* אָוֶרְקָאַנָּה.

† Mohammed is stated by other historians to have been the brother of Soliman, and uncle of Orkan.

‡ חֹוֹאַלָּאַק.

went in unto her ; and she conceived and bare a son, and they called his name Mohammed, who reigned after him, and did according to his own will against the nations which were round about him. Then the Lord fulfilled his word, that he spake by Obadiah* the prophet, saying, “ Thy destroyers, and they that make thee waste, shall go forth of thee.”

343. And it came to pass after another year, that Amurath gathered together soldiers, and went to fight against his father-in-law ; and George could not stand before him ; and he fortified the city Sindironiah†, and put a garrison into the midst thereof : and his first-born son was at their head. And he fled unto Hungary, with his wife and his children ; and also most of the priests of the town went with him, for they feared, lest some evil should overtake them. And Amurath took his whole country from him. And he turned his face against the city of Sindironiah, and besieged it, and took it with a strong hand. And he took the son of George, and blinded his eyes‡ ; and led him forth with him. And George, the father-in-law of Mohammed, dwelled in Hungary

* Rabbi Joseph should have quoted Isaiah xlix. 17.

† שִׁינְדִּירָנוֹנְיָה, perhaps Jandomir, or Sendomira, in Poland.

‡ i. e. He put out his eyes.

many days. And Amurath took also Scopia*, and Sophia†, and Novimontef, at that time. He began to take the youths of the uncircumcised; are they not the janissaries? And they became their men of war, and the chiefs of their hosts unto this day.

344. And John Castriot§, the prince of Albania, was a valiant hero, and fought against Amurath many days. But John could not withstand, but made peace with him, and gave him his sons as a pledge. And when Amurath saw George, who was the youngest, he found favor in his sight, and he loved him; and he caused him to be circumcised, and changed his name to Scanderbeg||, which means Prince Alexander, until this day; and his countenance ¶ was like unto that of the king's sons; and they taught him the learning and the language of the Turks. And he found favor in the sight of every one that saw him, and was unto Amurath as a son. And he was eight years old, when he was circumcised.

345. And the youth grew up and became a son of valor; and Amurath rejoiced over him, and

* אַישְׁקָופִיאָה. Scopia, or Ascopia, a town of Servia, on the river Veratazer. † שׁוֹפִיאָה.

‡ נָבִימּוֹנְטִי. § אַשְׁטְרֵיוֹאָת.

|| שְׁכָנְדֶּרְבֶּג. ¶ i. e. His rank, or the respect that was shewn him.

made him chief over his host. And he went to fight against the enemies of the king in Natolia, and they were smitten before him; and whithersoever he turned he prospered, for the Lord was with him: and the king said of him, "He is my right hand." And the Turks loved him much. And in those days the Hungarians went to fight against the cities of Amurath, and to plunder them. And he sent Scanderbeg against them; and they turned back, for his terror fell upon them. And there were with him many of the servants of his father, who taught him the law of their messiah, and spake unto his heart daily; and he inclined his ear unto them. Therefore he did not pursue after the Hungarians; for his eye had compassion upon them, and he would not shed the blood of the uncircumcised at that time: and he returned unto Adrianople, and they honored him much.

346. And his father, John Castriot, died. And Amurath sent Sibalia*, the chief captain of his host, against Albania, with a strong hand; and he took the city of Croia†, and all the cities of John Castriot, in the name of his sons, and he put a garrison into the midst of them. And Sibalia said unto them, "Be ye not afraid; for the sons of your master shall return hither, and every one

shall sit under his own fig-tree :" but Amurath did nothing of all that which the chief captain of his host had promised.

347. And he took all those cities; and to the brethren of Scanderbeg he gave deadly poison, and brought them down into the grave. And he spake unto the heart of Scanderbeg words of consolation ; and Scanderbeg observed this thing*. And from that time and afterwards, he thought in his heart to return unto his country and unto his God ; but he said nothing to any man, for he feared for his life.

348. And Charles, the king of Tzarphath, slew the men of Flanders, and punished the men of Paris, because they would not give the tribute which the king had put upon them. And he took away the barricades and the chains of iron, which had been from ancient times in the streets of Paris ; and the gates and the bars of the city he cast to the ground. . And he had no compassion upon the inhabitants of Rouen, for they were among the rebels ; and the nation feared him much.

349. And Charles slept with his fathers, in the year one thousand four hundred and twenty-two.

350. And his son Charles, reigned in his stead, in that year. And the English and the Burgun-

* Comp. Gen. xxxvii. 11.

dians fought against him, and they took his country from his hand ; only the territory of Berri, they took not : and it came to pass, that they called him in derision* “ The King of Berri ;” and so he was their song†. And Henry, the son of Henry, king of England, fought against Tzarphath, at that time, saying, “ Unto me belongeth the right of the government ;” for when Charles the Fifth‡ died, he left none to sit upon his throne after him ; no heir of power. And the nobles chose Philip of Valois§: it should not have been so, for to Edward, king of England, his grandfather, belonged the right of the inheritance ; for Henry ||, the father of Edward, took the sister of Charles the Fifth to wife ; and they made a covenant of peace between themselves, for thirty years, and therein they sware, saying, that if Henry were to survive his wife, he should sit upon the throne of Tzarphath, after the death of Charles the Fifth ; and if Henry were to die first, his sons should inherit after Charles, king of Tzarphath, their uncle ; for to them belonged the right of the inheritance : therefore came Henry to fight against Tzarphath at that time.

* ביטוּרִיצִינְשִׁי.

† i. e. He was the *subject* of their satires.

‡ Rabbi Joseph should have written the *Fourth*.

§ ואַלְאָאִישׁ. || It should be *Edward*.

351. Joseph the priest saith, “It seemeth, that there existed printing in those days; for I have seen a book printed at Venice, in the year one thousand four hundred and twenty-eight.”

352. And there arose the inhabitants of Aix*, which is in Provence, against the Jews, on the thirtieth day of the month Shebat, in the year five thousand one hundred and ninety, which is the year one thousand four hundred and thirty; and they slew nine of them with the edge of the sword; and they laid hand on the prey, and there was none to deliver from their hand in the day of the Lord’s wrath. And seventy-four souls changed their glory for one that does not profit, for the fear of the uncircumcised fell upon them. May that bitter day never be joined unto the days of the year; for on the same was that congregation plundered, and suddenly deprived of their curtains!† See, O Lord, and [ט] behold! because for Thy sake we are killed daily‡: plead our cause, and deliver us! And this misery is typified in the verse, “Save me, O Lord, for the waters are come unto my soul!§” בַּי contains the number of the days of the month, בָּאו. the number of the slain, מִים

* אשאייש.

‡ שׂדְדו יְרֻעֹתָם. The curtains of the Synagogue seem to be here expressive of protection. Comp. Hab. iii. 7.

‡ Psalm. xliv. 22.

§ Ib. lxix. 1.

number of the smaller date, יג the number of them which were cast away, שׁ נפּשׁ the number of their smaller date*.

353. In those days, in the days of Eugenius the pope, in the days of Felix†, the destructions‡ increased in Sphard, and Israel became very low. For there arose the priest, Friar Vincent, from the city of Valencia, of the sect of Baal Dominic § against the Jews; and he was unto them a Satan||, and stirred up against them all the inhabitants of the country, and they arose to swallow them up alive; and slew many with the edge of the sword, and many they burned with fire, and many they turned away by the power of the sword from the Lord, the God of Israel.

* Rabbi Joseph means to say that the numerical value of the words at the beginning of the sixty-ninth Psalm, “*For the waters are come unto my soul,*” כִּי בָאֹ מֵים עַד־נֶפֶשׁ : corresponds exactly with the numbers occurring in the history of the persecution. כִּי = $10 + 20 = 30$. It was on the *thirtieth* day of the month. בָאֹ = $6 + 1 + 2 = 9$. *Nine* Jews were slain. מֵים 40 + 10 + 40 = 90. The event occurred in the year of the Jewish era five thousand one hundred and *ninety*. יד 4 + 70 = 74. *Seventy-four* Jews underwent baptism. נפּשׁ = $300 + 80 + 50 = 430$. It was A. D. one thousand *four hundred and thirty*.

† Felix and Eugenius were rival popes.

‡ Baptism, here called שְׁמִרוֹת תְּבִינָה.

§ By Christian writers called St. Dominic.

|| A hinderer, or accuser.

And they burned the books of the Law of our God, and trampled upon them, as upon the mire in the streets ; and the mother they dashed in pieces upon the children, in the day of the Lord's wrath. And my forefathers, the priests, went out from the city of Coinca*, in those days, on account of the oppressor, and they went into the fortress Avitium†, and remained there ; and they that were left of them were killed. And some of them killed their sons and their daughters, that they might not be defiled ; but some of them changed their glory for one that does not profit, from that day and afterward. Those who were constrained to be baptized became numerous in the land of Sphard ; and they put upon them a mark of distinction unto this day. And the Jews returned unto the fortress of Avitium, and the fortress of Soriah‡, and other fortresses, until they went out from that accursed country, which the Lord had cursed.

354. Also upon the Jews that were in Savoy did this grievous oppressor turn his line of desolation. And I have seen the book *Mischath Marehu* §, how they hid themselves in the castles of Savoy, in those evil days. And this Belial, was in their sight a saint; and the Pope Calixtus

• קוינקה

† אוֹאַיטִי. Avitium, now called Benavente, a small town in Leon, on the river Ela. שׁוּרְיאָה †.

⁶ משחת מראהו "The Marring of his Visage." See Is. lii. 14.

wrote his memory among the saints, and appointed feast-days unto his name, on the fifth of the month of April. May God recompense him according to his deeds!

355. And Amurath the second made ready his chariot, and went to fight against Thessalonica, which belonged unto the Venetians in those days; and he took it with a strong hand, and its environs round about, in the year one thousand four hundred and forty-two; and it was a shame unto the uncircumcised.

356. And he fought against Hungary, and against Bosnia, and against Walachia, and against the land of Yavan many days; and he returned again to fight against Hungary. And he besieged Belgrade, and cast up trenches against it; but the men of the city did not move before him. And there died of his men about ten thousand, and he turned back with shame, in the year one thousand four hundred and forty-three.

357. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that Ladislaus, king of Hungary and Poland, went into the borders of Servia and Bulgaria with a strong hand, and arrayed a battle in the valley of the river Himo*, against Karamby† and Scanderbeg, the chief captains of the hosts of

Amurath. And the Turks were smitten before him, and they fell slain to the ground in that battle. And Karamby, the chief captain of the host, was taken alive, and they put a guard over him; and Scanderbeg and the rest fled, and their lives were unto them a prey.

358. And Scanderbeg rejoiced at this misery, and thought in his heart, “This is the time to laugh.” And it came to pass, in the darkness of the night, that one of the scribes of the king came unto him, and said, “Why art thou here, Scanderbeg; for we have never seen thee flee, except to-day?” And he said unto him, “This matter is by the decree of the watchers*; for the war belongeth to God, and who can withstand.” And Scanderbeg commanded; and they took the scribe of the king and bound him with chains. And the scribe said unto him, “What sin, or what wickedness have I done, that thou doest unto me this thing?” And Scanderbeg answered, “Thou hast not defrauded me, nor oppressed me; only, lest thou shouldst run away from me, I have done this thing. And now write a writing, written and sealed with the king’s ring, unto the governor, who is in Croia, the city of my father’s kingdom, that he should give me the city and its environs in the

* בְּנֹזֶת עִירִין פָּתַגְמָא [Dan. iv. 17—[Heb. text, v. 14.] i. e. by the agency of angels.

name of my master, the king ; for a writing, which is written in his name, cannot be recalled. And then shalt thou go with me, and I will exalt thy name, and thou shalt be my brother all thy days." And the scribe said, " How shall I do this wicked deed ? I should forfeit my head unto the king." And Scanderbeg drew his sword, and threatened him to kill him. And the scribe was afraid for his life, and did all that he said. And he said unto him, " Come with us;" and the scribe would not : and he killed him, and no man knew any thing of it. And Scanderbeg hastened and went unto Albania ; and the Turks who were there honored him much ; and they ate and became drunken with them. And it came to pass, when their hearts were merry with wine, that he said unto them, " Do you know why I am come hither ?" And they said, " We know not the cause." And he said, " The king, our master, has sent me, to dwell at Croia*, instead of the governor who is there." And they believed his words ; for the King Amurath loved him like unto the love of women. And one of them said that he would go with him ; and Scanderbeg was very glad, and they went into the city of Croia. And he gave the writing unto the governor, and he delivered

* Here spelled קְרֹוִיָה, but on page 261, קְרֹוִיה.

the city into his hand ; and Scanderbeg came into the city. And about three hundred Albanians were with him. And the Turks went their way. And it came to pass, when he came, that he took away the banner of Amurath, and set up his own banner, upon which was the black eagle with two heads. And they said, “ Long live Scanderbeg ! ” when he at the same time was revolting against his master. And he killed the Turks who were left there, and took all the cities of his father as a man would take the tip of his ear*. And also the rest of the cities which belonged unto Amurath, in Albania, he took, and became their king ; and the Albanians rejoiced much, for their souls were weary of the Turks ; and they said, “ Let our master, Scanderbeg, live for ever ! ”

359. And when Amurath heard what was done, it grieved him much in his heart, and he fought against Scanderbeg all his days, but could not do any thing. And Scanderbeg became very great, and his fame went throughout all the earth.

360. Then Amurath made peace with the Hungarians ; and he gave fifty thousand pieces of gold as the ransom for the chief captain of his host ; and the country had rest.

361. And it came to pass, after another year, that Ladislaus, king of Hungary, passed a law for

* See note to page 143.

the violation of the covenant; for the Pope Eugenius*, and the emperor of Constantinople, and the duke of Burgundy, and the Venetians, turned their hearts backward. And he went to fight against Amurath on the coast of Varna, which is on the Great Sea†, and to join himself unto the ships which they had sent thither to watch, lest Amurath should pass by, who was going to fight against the king of Caramania, after he had made peace with Ladislaus in those days. And when Amurath heard thereof, he hastened to fight against the Caramanian, and drove him away; and he passed over the strait of Gallipoli with the help of the men of Genoa with a strong hand; [מֵאָ] and he gave them their hire. And it came to pass, after seven days, that he stood before the enemies by the city of Varna, whose name was at first Dionysopolis‡, a four days' journey distant from Adrianople; and with him were about eighty thousand men. And this was on the eleventh day of the month November, in the year one thousand four hundred and forty-four. And they put the battle in array there, and the Turks were smitten; and Amurath purposed to flee; but the janissaries would not, saying, “Stand still and see the

* אַיָּוְנִינִיאוֹ.

† יְם הַגְּדוֹלָה, The Black Sea, as forming part of the Great or Mediterranean Sea. ‡ דִּיאָוְנִישִׁפּוֹלִי.

salvation of the Lord ;” and they fought again with force. And the bishops of Waradin* and Astrigonia† went out to pursue after those that fled, and they brought the soldiers out of the battle-array. And there came thither a company of Turks, and put the battle in array ; and Oniades†, the chief of the host of Ladislaus, ran to assist them. And Amurath and his men girded themselves with valor ; and Ladislaus ran against them with horsemen, and they slew among the horses of the king’s gate§, a great slaughter. And the janissaries fought against them, and took Ladislaus in the midst, and cut off the legs of his horse ; and he fell to the ground, and they slew him ; and many nobles and honorable men died with him at that time ; and of the Poles, there was not one left. And Oniades, the chief of the host, sought to take the corpse of the king ; but he could not, and his feet had well nigh slipped on that day. And all the priests that came with the king, died ; and they that brought corn, bread, and victuals, and the rest fled for their lives. And the Cardinal Julian Cesarino fled, and the Hungarians met him and slew him ; and his carcase was for food unto the beasts of the earth, and the fowls of heaven. He had turned the heart of Ladislaus to violate his covenant,

* אַנְגִּידֵס וְאַרְדוֹן Varadinum. † אַשְׁטְרִינוֹנוֹיָה.

§ The life guards.

saying, “It becometh not the uncircumcised to keep their oaths towards other nations.” So let all thine enemies perish*, O Lord! And Amurath erected there a high column for a memorial, and wrote upon it all that had befallen him, and gave thanks unto God. And even at this day, the dry bones are found there, as a token against the children of rebellion†.

362. And Amurath commanded, and they took off the head of Ladislaus, and put it upon a pole, and carried it about in all the land of Yavan, and the Turks rejoiced much. And Amurath pursued not after those who fled ; and he was greatly humbled in his heart. And they said unto him, “Why is thy countenance sad to-day, after the Lord hath given thine enemies into thy hand ?” And he said, “I have no pleasure in a war like unto this.” And he returned unto Adrianople ; and he paid his vows, which he had vowed, and gave thanks unto God.

363. Then he made peace with the Venetians, and turned his face towards the land of Yavan. And he went unto the coast of the Morea, unto the place which was called Hexamilia‡. And there

* Judges v. 31. † Numb. xvii. 10. [Heb. text, v. 25.]

‡ אַיְכָשְׁמִילִי, the village of *Ecamilia*, on the Isthmus of Corinth, was destroyed in the late wars ; but the Americans have lately founded there a colony of those Greeks who had lost their property in other parts of the Morea.

was a high wall from sea to sea, six miles long*. And he took it by force, and pulled it down. And there fell before him the brethren of the emperor of Constantinople slain to the ground. And they took the captives and the prey, and burned the houses, and destroyed the best part thereof; and he took also Valona† at that time.

364. And he went to fight against Scanderbeg, his servant, who had rebelled against him. And also his son Mohammed went with him, and besieged the city of Croia; and he cast up trenches against it for many days. And they battered its fortified walls; but they could not do any thing, and he went away thence, and returned unto his country, and became sick, because of the trouble of this matter; and he died at Adrianople in the month of November, in the year one thousand four hundred and fifty; and Mohammed the second, his son, reigned in his stead.

365. Mohammed the second was twenty-one years old when he began to reign, and he reigned thirty years; and the name of his mother was Irene‡, the daughter of the despota of Servia. And he was a prosperous man, and a scourge, and a breaker of the uncircumcised all his days; and he slew his

* The remains of this wall are still extant.

† **וָלֹנוֹת**, Valona, a town in Upper Albania, on the coast near mount Chimera. ‡ **וִינְהָ**.

brother, and the government was confirmed in his hand. And he loved the wise men, and the artists who were cunning to invent all manner of work ; and he gave them according to their works. And he desired that the men of renown should write down his wars, to obtain an everlasting fame, that should not be cut off. · And he read in the chronicles more than all the kings who were before him. And he loved John Maria Vicentino*, the servant of his servant, because he wrote in their language and in the Italian language, the battles which he fought against Ausoncasano†, king of Persia. And because of his many good qualities, he obtained a name among the heroes who were of old men of renown ; and his fame went throughout all the earth.

366. And he made ready his chariot, and took his people with him‡, and turned his face against Constantinople with a numerous host and with a strong hand ; and they besieged it by land and by sea many days. And the emperor sent for assistance unto the kings of the uncircumcised ; but like the deaf adder, they would not hearken§. And they fought against it daily, and made trenches round about, and made a bridge on the side of Pera, two thousand cubits long, the work of masons

* יואן מאריה ויצינטינו.

אוֹשׁוֹנָקָשָׁנוּ †

‡ Exod. xiv. 6.

§ Psalm lviii. 4.

and cunning workmen*, the like of which had not been seen ; and they raised towers upon it to fight against the men of the city. And the men of the city also filled their hands, and fortified it daily, and gave no slumber unto their eyes. And the Turks cast up a trench against it, and battered its walls unto destruction. And it came to pass one day, that Mohammed commanded, and they caused a voice to pass through the camp, saying, “ Stand and be prepared for to-morrow ; for then we shall draw nigh unto this city for war, and God will give it unto our hand, and ye shall lay hand on the spoil during three days.” And the soldiers rejoiced much, and neither ate nor drank any thing that day. And it came to pass at the rising of the stars, that they sat down to eat and to drink every one with his brother, and every one with his neighbour ; and they rejoiced together. And they embraced and kissed every one his neighbour, and went unto their tents ; and a voice was heard in the city, and the city of Constantinople was filled with consternation. And they wept sore, and every one cried unto his God ; and they entreated the dead in behalf of the living.† And they carried their bones‡ round about the city, and fasted also on that day. And there were two walls round about it, and they

* Exod. xxxv. 35. † Isaiah viii. 19. ‡ i. e. Relics.

placed the soldiers between the walls, and shut the gates. And it came to pass at the end of the middle watch, that the Turks drew nigh unto the city, and fought against it with force. But the men of the city filled their hands, and threw stones on them, and arrows, and sling-stones, until the morning light; and there died many Turks at that time. The morning dawned, and Mohammed drew near, and gave the signal for battle; and he commanded, and they fought against the city round about. And they divided among themselves the walls towards the sea and the land, and shouted with a great shouting: and the earth rent*; and the sound was heard afar off. And they put their shields upon their heads, and went up by ladders upon the walls of the city with force. And the men of the city cast many of them down to the ground. And it came to pass when one fell, that two went up in his stead, for they were more than the locusts: and there died many Turks at that time; and the rest drew back. And Mohammed came near the second time, and spake in the ears of the soldiers; and they returned to fight as at the first. And they went up by ladders: but the men of the city also filled their hand at that time, and cast them to the ground with stones, and with

* 1 Kings, i. 40.

arrows, and with burning fire ; and others went up in their stead ; and the men of the city could not draw their breath at that time. There was a man of Genoa among them, his name was John Justiniani* ; and he was a mighty man of valor, and fought with all his strength ; and the Greeks put their trust in that man. [בג] And it came to pass, as they were fighting, that the enemy wounded him ; and he was taken from the wall to be healed. And when Constantine, the son of Helena, the emperor, heard of it, he went unto him, and entreated, and asked of him to return unto the wall ; but he would not hearken unto him. And the emperor commanded, and they opened the gate of the inner wall, and he entered the city. And it came to pass as he went, that the men who were upon the wall did fret, for his shadow had departed from them†, and they fought no more as at other times. And the Turks drew nigh and went up to the wall, and the Yavanim fled before them. And they sought to come into the city by the way of the gate, by which the Genoese came ; and they fled as before the sword, and fell one over the other ; and among them the emperor himself fled, for he feared for his life ; and he fell to the ground, and

* Gibbon writes Justinian. See Chap. lxviii.

† נלע. Numb. xiv. 9 (margin) ; i. e. his encouraging defence was removed.

the men of the city trampled upon him in their hurry; and he died in that day like one of the lowest. And the men from within fled; save only two, who chose death rather than life on that day; and they fought until their soul departed, for their hearts were like the hearts of lions. And it came to pass, when they entered the city, that they slew about eight hundred men able to draw the sword, who were found at the entrance of the gate of the city at that time. And also the inhabitants of the city who came out against them with arrows and with bows, they slew with the edge of the sword. And they ran about in the city, and climbed up upon the walls, and came in through the windows, and laid hand on the prey; and there was none to deliver out of their hand. And the city went into captivity; and the people were cut off from the city, and the women were lain with; and they went into captivity before the oppressor. And they went into the churches and took their spoil, and their silver, and their gold, and their images, and brake their monuments; and the priests were led away captive on that day. Then did the Lord fulfil that which he spake by the Prophet Jeremiah, saying, “The cup also shall pass through unto thee; thou shalt be drunken, and shalt make thyself naked*.” And they

* Lam. iv. 21.

brought out from that city silver and gold in great abundance ; and of the rest of the prey and booty there was no reckoning. And the Turk Mohammed did eat the spoil of his enemies on that day, in the year one thousand four hundred and fifty-three, on the twenty-ninth day of the month of May. And it came to pass on the third day, that Mohammed made a great banquet for all his nobles and his servants. And it came to pass, when their hearts were merry with wine, that he commanded, and they brought out the captives, the heads of the people of the country ; and he brought them down in blood unto the grave. And they brought also Dirilco*, the governor of the city, and killed his first-born son before his face ; but the second he left alive to lie with him ; and also the old man he brought down in blood unto the grave. Know ye and see, that Constantine, the son of Helena, was the first who reigned in that city ; and Constantine, the son of Helena, was the last. And the city had been in the hands of the uncircumcised kings one thousand one hundred and twenty-one years when it fell into the hand of the Turks at that time. Then did the Genoese give the city of Pera unto Mohammed in peace. And it came to pass, after some more days, that

* דירילקו.

they cast down its walls ; and he took the women and the children according to his heart's desire ; and there was none to deliver from his hand ; and he ruled over the treasures of gold. And Mohammed commanded, and they built the ruined walls of Constantinople as they were before ; and he brought men and women from all the divers cities he had taken to dwell therein ; and it has been their royal city unto this day.

367. And when the Albanians, the inhabitants of the Morea, heard that the city was taken, and that the emperor was dead, they revolted against Thomas and his brother Demetrius, and went for assistance to Mohammed, who accepted their persons. And he sent soldiers to their relief, and humbled the Albanians ; and they returned unto their place as at the first. And they promised to give unto Mohammed seventeen thousand pieces of gold every year ; and Thomas was called Despota of the Morea ; but in the throne Mohammed was greater.

368. And Mohammed gathered his host, and went unto Athens, and encamped against it, and the city was very strong. And the man, the lord of the country*, saw that there was no strength in his hand to deliver it, and gave it into his hand ; and Mohammed gave unto him some of the open

* Gen. xlvi. 33.

cities, sufficient for his support*. And his two sons he led forth with him, for they obtained favor in his sight. And the boys grew†; and one was a son of valor, and he loved him much.

369. And it came to pass, after that the stars in their courses had fought‡ against Charles the eighth, king of Tzaphrath, they returned and left off from him; and after all hope was lost, he bruised in his battles the heads of all his enemies, and took his kingdom from their hands. And he subdued Normandy also, after he had fought thirty-six years in that country. And he subdued Aquitaine also, after it had been ten years in the hands of the English. And Charles knew that good as well as evil events are the fruits of evil times; that as they encamp, so shall they set forward§. And it came to pass, after the Lord had raised up evil from his own house, letting him fight against his son Lewis, who reigned after him, and his government was firmly established, that he became sick of his last sickness, and he died old and full of years: and many of the physicians thought that deadly poison had been given unto him.

370. And Lewis the eleventh, his son, reigned

* i. e. Cities paying him sufficient tribute for his maintenance.

† Gen. xxv. 27. ‡ Judges v. 20.*

§ Numbers ii. 17. Rabbi Joseph intends to say, *As the evils come, so they will go.*

after him in the year one thousand four hundred and fifty-seven. And the nobles of Tzaphrath were afraid of him, and spake kindly unto his brother Charles, the duke of Berri, saying, “Come, be thou our ruler, and let this ruin be under thy hand;* and now, fear not, neither be faint-hearted, for we are with thee whithersoever thou goest.” And Charles hearkened unto their voice, and went unto Britany with a strong hand, and took it.

371. In those days did the men of Mohammed fight daily against the despota of Acarnania, which is Larta†; and the despota could not withstand; but when he had taken to wife the daughter of John, the captain of the host of Alphonso, king of Naples, he was among his helpers, and delivered him from the sword of the Turks; and they returned unto their country. And John, his father-in-law, the captain of the host, departed from him. And the servants of the despota made a conspiracy against their master, and delivered him into the hands of Mohammed; and he took all his country from his hand. And his heart became very proud, and he was more exalted than his forefathers; and he multiplied horses to himself ‡.

372. And when George, the prince of Servia,

* Isaiah iii. 6.

לארטה.

‡ Deut. xvii. 16.

his mother's father, heard of it, he became afraid and sorely distressed, and went unto the king of Hungary for help ; but he hearkened not unto his voice ; and it grieved him unto death. And when he heard that Michael Vilogo*, and Ladislaus, the brother of the woywode's wife, who was at Belgrade, were coming by the way of his country, he sent to meet them. And the men went, and Michael escaped from their hands ; and his brother they slew with the edge of the sword ; and Michael observed the thing. And he sent to spy out George ; and the messengers returned and said, " We came unto George, and he goeth also to view the cities of his kingdom on the banks of the river Danube ;" and he went out against him in the road with a strong hand. And he set the battle in array against him, and wounded him in his right hand ; and he took him alive, and led him away with him. And George gave him a ransom, the ransom for his life, and returned unto his house. And his blood came from him daily, so that the physicians could not stop it, and he became faint and died ; and his son Lazarus reigned in his stead. And he drove away his eldest brother, George ; this is that George whom Amurath had made blind ; and he went away from him. And it came to pass

* וילוֹנוּ.

after some days, when Lazarus slept with his fathers, that there was strife amongst them. [גט].

373. And the blind George went unto Mohammed, the Turk, to assist him. And the wife of the deceased Lazarus went also to the king of Hungary, and wept and entreated him, and prayed before him for her people. And Ladislaus gathered together both a host and horsemen, and sent them unto John Carafoga*, the cardinal of Saint Angelo, to help him. But they could not do any thing; for Mohammed had hastened to send before they came; and they took all the cities of Servia, as a man would take the tip of the ear. And the cardinal returned back; his feet had well nigh slipped† at that time, which is the year one thousand four hundred and fifty-nine.

374. In those days did the despota of the Morea revolt against Mohammed; and he gave him not the tribute, for he leaned upon the staff of the broken reed‡ of the uncircumcised: but his hope was vain§. And he returned to be protected under his wings; and he received him: but he pondered the thing in his heart.

375. And when Mohammed saw that the stars in their courses fought against his enemies, and that he was called by the men of Servia, he said,

* קראפוגה.

† Ps. lxxiii. 2.

‡ Comp. Is. xxxvi. 6.

§ Job xli. 9, [Heb. text, v. 1.]

"It is time to act." And he gathered together his host, and those who were numbered of them were one hundred and fifty thousand ; and he turned his face toward Hungary, and passed over the mountains, and went unto the river Save*.

376. And also John, the cardinal, whom the pope had sent, gathered together soldiers from Ashkenaz, from Bohemia, and from Hungary ; for the brother of John Capistrano†, preached continually in the ears of the people of the country, and promised unto them the garden of Eden in the name of the pope. And they believed his words ; and those who were numbered of them were forty thousand. And also the woywode gathered both a host and horsemen, and they came unto Belgrade, a city on the utmost part of their borders.

377. And Mohammed came nigh, and besieged Belgrade, which was on the banks of the river Danube ; and they fought against it many days, and battered its walls daily. And also the men of the city, and its hired soldiers, filled their hand, and fortified themselves much. And they cast down its walls, and came near unto it, but could not prevail against it ; for the men of the city had saved it whilst the wall remained. And it grieved Mohammed, and he said, "Give it no rest day

and night." And he commanded, and they divided the walls between themselves, and fought against it; and much people died at that time. And it came to pass at eventide, that Mohammed also, and the men of his guard, drew nigh to see if, perhaps, God would deliver it into his hand. And the archers shot from the wall and wounded him in his right hand; and he became feeble: and they carried him into the tent. And their hearts sank, and they went from the city and fought no more. And they left the battering rams as they were, and returned into the camp. And it came to pass in the darkness of the night, that they removed thence and went on their journey into the land of Yavan. And Mohammed hastened unto his house, and was humbled in his heart, and did not speak proudly from that day and afterwards, as at first, for his soul was embittered. And every time he spake of Belgrade, his anger went up into his nostrils.

378. In those days died the Pope Calixtus, and they chose Æneas Picolomino*. And he went unto Mantua, and the princes assembled to fight against the Turk; and the pope also promised to go with soldiers; but they did nothing, for God turned their heart backward.

379. And when Mohammed heard that they had assembled together to fight in his country, he gathered together his camp in the year one thousand four hundred and sixty, and sent them unto the Morea ; and they took all that country, and the city of Corinth ; and Demetrius*, the despota, was taken alive, and they sent him unto Constantinople bound with chains, for he had revolted against his master, and had violated his covenant. And his brother Thomas fled unto Rome, and he gave unto the pope the head of a carcase†, for a present ; and he received it, and gave him sufficient for a livelihood.

380. And Mohammed gathered again soldiers, and went with his ships into the sea of Pontus, and encamped against the city Trebizond, and besieged it, and took it in the year one thousand four hundred and sixty-two ; and its King Dor‡, the son-in-law of Ausoncasano§, king of Persia, was taken alive ; and they sent him unto Constantinople, and brought him down in blood unto the grave. And also the rest of the cities which belonged unto the uncircumcised round about it and the city Sinope||, Mohammed took at that time, and destroyed the whole royal seed. Also against

* יְהִידָמִיטְרֹו.

† פֶנֶר אַחֲד, means here a relic.

‡ דּוֹר. § אַוְשׁוֹנוֹקָאשָׁאנָג.

|| שְׁוִינָאָפֶן.

Ausoncasano, king of Persia, did Mohammed fight; and he was smitten before him. And he returned and fought the second time; and Ausoncasano was smitten before him; for the Persian horses were not used to the voice of the multitude of brazen battering-rams*. And they departed from their order of battle, and fell slain to the ground; and the rest fled for their lives.

381. And in the year one thousand four hundred and sixty-three, he again gathered soldiers and ships in abundance. And they went unto the isle of Mytilene, formerly called Lesbos, and besieged it many days, and battered its walls unto destruction, and took it by force; and all the males thereof they slew with the edge of the sword; and the women and the children went captive before the oppressor. And Francis Gatalos†, the Genoese governor of the city, was taken alive, and they led him forth with them; and they ate the prey of their enemies at that time.

382. And the Monisi‡, who were in Scio, who were also Genoese, heard of it, and were much afraid, and sent unto Mohammed, saying, “Behold, we are thy servants, and we will be servants unto tribute.” And they gave him ten thousand

* אל הונחשת, here means cannon or great guns.
‡ המונייש‡.

ducats annually. And he made a covenant with them; and they have belonged unto him until this day.

383. And the Venetians said, “Now shall the Turks lick up* all that is round about us.” And they gathered soldiers and horsemen, and sent them to sea in ships and galleys ; and they went unto the Morea. And they built the walls of Hexamilia which had been cast down. And they went and besieged Corinth, and the city was invested ; and they battered its walls, and daily fought against it.

384. And it was told unto Mohammed, and he also gathered his host, and sent them unto the Morea, and they battered the walls of Hexamilia ; and the uncircumcised watchmen of the walls could not withstand, but drew back. And the Turks threw down the wall, and went unto the place where the uncircumcised were, and set the battle in array against them ; and there fell of the uncircumcised much people ; and the rest turned their backs and fled unto the sea ; and they pursued after them, and slew some of them with the edge of the sword : and the rest were taken alive. And the Turks took the rams, the brazen rams, and all that they had, and returned with gladness unto Constantinople. And some of the captives whom

they led forth with them, they brought down in blood unto the grave, in the streets of Constantinople; and the rest were sold as men-servants and maid-servants in all the cities of Asia, and returned no more unto their homes.

385. And when the Venetians saw that they could not prevail against him, they sent messengers unto the pope, saying, “ Speak, we pray you, unto the ears of the kings of the uncircumcised, that they may help us ; for [מֵ] the waters are come in unto our souls* :” but they did nothing, for they fought each one against his neighbour. And it came to pass, after some more days, that the pope purposed to go to fight against the Turk. And he spake with the king of Hungary, and the duke of Burgundy, and the men of Venice. And also unto the rest of the kings he wrote, saying, “ Hasten ye, and come unto Ancona, that we may fight against our enemies ; and I also will go with you.” But the Lord would not ; for the princes of Tzaphrath fought, and every one behaved himself proudly against his neighbour†. And the host of King Lewis was smitten by Monlirico‡, before the host of the duke of Burgundy ; and they fell slain to the ground, and the rest fled

* Ps. lxix. 1. [Heb. text v. 2.]

† Isaiah iii, 5.

‡ מונליריקו.

for their lives. And Lewis sent messengers unto the pope, saying, “I cannot go, for the weapons of war have beset the gate:” and the duke of Burgundy also sent unto him, saying according to these words*.

386. In those days, Charles with Lewis the king, and the duke of Burgundy, went with a strong hand, and besieged Paris; for the king fled thence before them: and they besieged it many days.

387. And the pope went unto Ancona, and found there a great host, Germans and Frenchmen, who went willingly; but he sent them home, for he drew near unto death. And his sickness became heavy upon him, and he died on the thirteenth day of the month of August, in the year one thousand four hundred and sixty-one. On that day, the duke of Venice arrived there with twelve galleys; and he returned back, for his hope was found vain.

388. Then the Venetians sent Nicholas Canalita†, the captain of their host, unto the seas of Yavan, and gave the city of Inea‡ to be plundered, and went unto Patras, which is in the Morea, and fought against the Turks who were there, and slew them with the edge of the sword.

* i. e. The same words.

† קאנאלאיטו. ‡ איניאה.

And they took the tower of Vostizza*, and fortified it, and put a garrison into the midst thereof.

389. And the nobles of Tzarphath said, “How long shall the sword devour?” And they made peace between themselves on the first day of the month of November, in the year one thousand four hundred and sixty-five. The terms of the agreement were, that Charles the brother of the king, should leave the dukedom of Berri, and should take Normandy instead thereof; and that the king should give a certain sum of money, on some cities, unto the nobles who were in alliance with his brother Charles and the duke of Burgundy; and that every one should return in peace unto his place. But they had not many days of peace: for Charles returned and set the battle in array against his brother Lewis, because he had broken his covenant; and he took Normandy from his hand, and at that time the duke of Burgundy was amongst his allies. Then King Lewis gave the province of Aquitaine unto his brother Charles; and they made peace between themselves a second time. And it came to pass after a few more days, that they gave unto Charles, the king’s brother, deadly poison, and brought him down unto the grave; so

Aquitaine returned under the government of the king.

390. In those days Charles, duke of Burgundy, persuaded Edward, king of England, to fight against King Lewis. And he passed over unto Tzapharath with a strong hand. And Lewis feared and was sorely distressed, for he knew not what the day might bring forth. And he made peace with Edward, and gave unto him according as he asked; for Lewis did not rely upon the strength of his hand and his might. And the country was seven years at rest. And he gave tribute annually unto Edward, according to what they had agreed between themselves.

391. And it came to pass, when God left Lewis at rest from all his enemies round about, that he avenged his vengeance upon the duke of Nemours*, and upon Lewis of Luxembourg, the grand constable, and took their heads from off them, and brought them down in blood unto the grave. In those days, King Lewis took a great part of Burgundy, after the Swiss under the command of the duke of Lorraine, when the people of that country were as sheep which have no shepherd, had smitten Charles, the duke of Burgundy.

392. And Lewis consented, and his son Charles took to wife* Margaret, the daughter of Maximilian, the king of the Romans, whom his wife Maria, the daughter of Charles, duke of Burgundy, had borne unto him ; and they made peace with Flanders in those days.

393. And it came to pass, in the year one thousand four hundred and seventy, that Mohammed gathered together soldiers in multitude, and sent them to sea in ships, whose number was two hundred galleys and two hundred large and small vessels, with Mohammed Pasha at their head. And they went to fight against the city of Chalcis†, which is on the isle of Negropont, the name of which was at first Eubœa‡ ; and they encamped against it, and battered its walls during many days. And when Mohammed saw that he had been there many days *and prevailed nothing*, he gathered more soldiers together, and advanced once more and beat down its walls unto destruction. And it came to pass on a day, that he spake kindly unto

* Charles was affianced to Margaret, while that princess was a child ; she bore for several years the title of " Queen of France ;" but the contract was dissolved, and Charles married the reigning duchess of Britany.

† קָלְשִׁידִי, now called by the same name as the island in which it is situated.

‡ אַיּוֹבָאֵיקָה.

the soldiers, and said unto them, “ Ye come nigh this day to fight against our enemies : fear not, neither be ye dismayed before them, for God hath given them into our hands.” And they divided the walls ; and he made promises unto him who should first climb up : and they sounded the tabrets and trumpets with high sounding ; and their voice was heard afar off. And they fought against it two days, day and night, and gave no sleep unto their eyes. And the earth shook and trembled in those days at the voice of the battering rams, and the city was twice broken into ; but the besieged drove them back by force, and much people perished. And the Turks returned once more ; and the inhabitants of the city retained no strength. And they entered the piazza of the place, and said, “ Let us die.” And those whose hearts were not filled* to withstand, fled unto the tower ; and all the soldiers died there. And the Turks came into the city ; and they took the Italians who were found there, and put them upon a pole after their manner†, and flayed them alive, and they cut them in half : this was never heard of before. And the streets of Negropont were filled with the blood of the slain of every sort ; and their stink‡ went up toward heaven. And the women and children went captive before the

* i. e. With courage.

† i. e. The Turks impaled their captives.

‡ Compare Joel ii. 20, and Amos iv. 10.

enemy, who took all the spoil at that time. And they went unto the tower; and the garrison gave it into their hand, only asking that they should let them go free. And it came to pass, as the garrison went out, that the Turks brake their covenant, and slew them with the edge of the sword; their eye had no compassion upon them. And this desolate city became Mohammed's on the fifteenth day of the month of June, which is the month Thammuz, in the year one thousand four hundred and seventy, which is the year five thousand two hundred and thirty of the creation.

394. And Nicholas Canalita returned unto Venice, and they cast him into prison, because he had not delivered Negropont, and they put Pietro Mozinigo* in his stead. And he went with sixty galleys and twenty large ships unto the land of Yavan, and laid waste all the cities which were on the sea at that time; and it grieved Mohammed much. [מה]

395. And the Genoese feared lest some evil should also befall them in Caffa† which belonged unto them on the Great Sea‡, and they sent thither one hundred and fifty men by the way of Friuli§,

* מוצינינו.

† אפקה.

‡ הים מאIOR : literally, The Sea Major. The name properly applies to the whole Mediterranean; but the context shows that the Black Sea is here meant.

§ פריבולי.

and they passed through Hungary and Poland and Tartary, and came unto Caffa.

396. And there were men who advised to give Candia into the hand of Mohammed, and he consented to send thither. And the thing was known unto the lords of Venice, and they sent their ships and took the conspirators, and brought them down in blood unto the grave ; and they put a garrison in the midst thereof. And when Mohammed heard thereof, he turned his face toward the Great Sea, and sent his ships thither. He sent also soldiers by land ; and they went and encamped against Caffa, and battered its walls ; and the city was besieged. And when the Genoese saw that evil was determined against them, they gave the city into his hand in the year one thousand four hundred and seventy-five, on the sixth day of the month of June. On that day did Achmed* Pasha, the chief of the host, send the eldest of his household into the city ; and to him they gave the castle and he sat upon the throne of the nobles and judges. And it came to pass on the next morning, that they caused it to be proclaimed† that they should bring all the weapons of war to him into the castle ; and he kept them in custody. And he took the sum§ of all the inhabitants of the city,

* Αχμέντ.

† Exod. xxxvi. 6.

i. e. The men of the city.

§ Exod. xxx. 12 ; Numb. i. 2.

and put a mark on the young men. And he searched diligently after the goods of strangers in the midst of the city, and took them from them. And the pasha came also into the city ; and he took one thousand five hundred children on whom there was the mark, and all the men-servants and all the maid-servants, and sent them to sea in ships ; and half of all their property he took, and made them servants unto tribute. And he took also some of the Genoese, and brought them even unto Pera and Constantinople to dwell there ; them and their wives and their children. And Hubert Iscoarzafino*, who was the cause of all this, they hanged upon a tree ; and Caffa became a city of Mohammed at that time ; and they put a garrison into the midst thereof.

397. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that Mohammed gathered one hundred thousand men, and sent them unto Albania ; and they encamped against Scutari† which is upon the river Boyanah‡. And they besieged it, and battered its walls many days. And it came to pass in the winter-time, that the Lord smote them with burning fever, so that they could not withstand ; and they went off from it, and abode in the

* אָוְבִידַתּוֹ אִישְׁקָוָרִצָּאָפִינוּ

† אַשְׁטָפָאָרָוּ

‡ בָּכָנָה, probably Bocca.

cities which were nigh unto it until the time of ripe corn.

398. In those days did the pasha send some of the soldiers unto the cities of John Gernui*, and they subdued Sabiacot and Drivastro† and Liso§ by force; and they slew all their males, and the women and the children went captive before the oppressor. And it came to pass in the month Abib, that they returned unto Scutari, and the city was besieged. And when the Venetians saw that no man purposed to come to assist them, they sent messengers unto Mohammed, and sued for peace. And he hearkened unto their voice, only that they should give him Scutari and one hundred thousand pieces of gold; and they did according to all that he asked, and they made a covenant of peace between themselves. Then he appointed again || a bailiff¶ in Constantinople, to judge the quarrels between the merchants of Venice that dwelt there. And he sent the soldiers into Hungary, and his ships went unto Apulia, and they took much prey.

399. And Mohammed gathered again soldiers and ships in multitude, and sent them unto the isle of Rhodes; and they arrived there on the twenty-first day of the third month, which is the month of

דָּרְיוֹאשְׁתָּרוֹ † שָׁבֵיאָקָו † יְהִיאָ נִירָנִי * בָּאִילּוּ ¶ לִשְׁוֹ ‡ חֲדִשָּׁה ||, anew, again.

May, in the year one thousand four hundred and seventy-eight. And they gave all the open cities which were therein to be plundered ; and they encamped against the city of Rhodes, and besieged it, and battered its walls many days ; but the besieged delivered it out of their hand, as they went out against them time after time. And also they came nigh unto the city, and fought against it daily ; and they cast up trenches against it, and the wall fell under it, and the trenches which were round about it were filled with all sorts of things* ; and they divided its walls, and drew nigh unto the city on the twenty-first day of the month of July, when the morning star arose ; and they raised a great shout, and their voice was heard from afar ; and they went up upon the breaches of the wall, and the men of the city destroyed many of them ; and they fell slain to the ground. And they went up again upon the wall with a high hand, and the uncircumcised could not withstand ; and they dispersed themselves in the piazza† of the city, and the Turks pursued after them. And the terror of God was upon them ; and the uncircumcised girded themselves with strength, and drove them out from the city, and they returned unto their tents with shame. And the men of the city repaired

* מִן אֶל זָה. Compare Ps. cxliv. 13. † i. e. The market-place.

the breaches of the wall, and remained on their guard as at first. Then came two ships, which the king of Naples had sent to their aid, on the thirtieth day of the month of July ; and the smaller one came into the city with a high hand, and they received her with gladness ; but the men of the larger one were afraid, and she turned back ; but it came to pass in the morning, that she came also. And the Turks went against her ; and she stopped her progress. And the wind drove her on farther, and they could not stand before her ; and she also, to their vexation and grief, came into the city. And all the people of the country rejoiced with great joy for two days. And it grieved the Turks much ; and they went away from the city and brought the rams back unto the ships, and returned unto their country on the seventeenth day of the month of August ; and the war ceased.

400. And Mohammed sent fifteen thousand men riding upon horses, and Achmed, the captain of his host, in ships unto the isle of Santa Maura*, the name of which was Leucadia† at first, and they took it. And also Cephalonia‡ and Zante§ were delivered into their hands. And they went to the coast of Apulia to plunder. They reached Otranto ;

* מאורה.

+ איאוקאדיאה.

‡ ציפאלוניה.

§ איצינטו.

and the men thereof said nothing unto them* as they went ashore. And they went in all the land of Otranto, and no man could stand before them. And they returned unto the city on the twenty-eighth day of the month of July, in the year one thousand four hundred and seventy, and said, "God has delivered it into our hand." And they fortified themselves round about after their manner. And they besieged it; and the city was invested; and they battered its walls unto destruction. And on the eleventh day of the month of August they fought against it; and the city was broken up†, and they entered it with a high hand. And the bishop, and the heads of the people of the country, fled into their houses of prayer; and the Turks went thither, and brought them down in blood unto the grave. And the women and children went captive before the oppressor ‡; and all beauty departed from Otranto at that time.

401. And Ferdinand§, king of Naples, became sore afraid, and sent to call his son the duke of Calabria. And he gathered all his host; and they went unto the coast of Otranto, and encamped opposite to it, at a distance, and fortified themselves round about. He sent also by the way of the sea, ships and soldiers in multitude. And the Turks

* i. e. The inhabitants made no resistance.

† 2 Kings xxv. 4.

‡ Lam. i. 5.

§ פָּרָנְדִּיך.

went out against them daily, and destroyed much people of them. And it came to pass one day, that the uncircumcised drew nigh unto the city; and the Turks went out against them, and the men of the king were smitten before them, and many fell slain to the ground; and also the Count Julius, the captain of their host fell; and the rest fled for their lives. And Lewis of Capua and his men fled into the tower which was near the city; and they pursued after them, and prepared themselves to cast the tower to the ground. And the men became afraid, and went out unto them for peace; and led them into [גנ] the city. And the men of the king were again smitten before them daily; and many nobles and honorable men died in that battle; and the king became much amazed*. And the king went unto Apulia, and dwelt at Barletta in those days; and he sent for assistance unto the kings of the uncircumcised. And Matthias, the king of Hungary, sent eight hundred horsemen; and from Sphard, and from Portugal, and from Aragon, and from Catalonia, they sent a very great host in ships; but the Turks fortified themselves, so that they could do nothing to them; and the uncircumcised fell before them slain to the ground. And many were taken in their pits; and they led them forth bound into the city in those days. And their strength was consumed in vanity† all the

* Est. iv. 4.

† Lev. xxxiii. 20.

summer. And they arose therefrom, and went to dwell in the cities which were nigh round about it.

402. In those days did the ships of the Turks go into every city on the coast of Apulia, and gave them to be plundered ; and there was none to save from their hand. And Achmed, the pasha, the captain of the host, placed eight hundred men, and corn, and bread, and victuals, in abundance, in Otranto. And he returned unto Constantinople, to speak unto his master Mohammed, and told him all that had happened unto him : and Mohammed was very glad.

403. And there came a man of the land of Natolia on that day, and told unto Mohammed, "Thy son Bajazet has fled before the Caramanian host ; and there has also been great slaughter among the people." And Mohammed trembled much ; and he was fifty-six years old in those days ; and he purposed to go to assist his son with a strong hand. And he said unto Achmed, the chief of the host, "Come with me ; and when we return we will go unto Italy : and the counsel of the Lord shall stand*." And Mohammed and his host passed over unto Natolia : and it came to pass, when they were near Scutari†, that Mohammed fell sick and died,

* Prov. xix. 21.

+ שָׁמְךָ נִתְּנָהָר.

in the year one thousand four hundred and eighty-one: and Bajazet, his son, reigned in his stead.

404. And Bajazet had a brother, whose name was Gimah*, who is Zezemon†; and the janissaries‡, the men of the host, were inclined for Bajazet; so he hastened to return unto Constantinople before his brother came. And they took his son Korkud, who was thirteen years old, and set him upon the royal throne, and said, “ May the king live!” And they led him through the streets of the city, and said, “ May Bajazet live for ever!” And Bajazet returned from Natolia in the third month, and they chose him to be king, and he sat upon the royal throne. And unto the janissaries, and unto the nobles who were inclined for him, he gave presents; and his throne was very firmly established. And he gathered together soldiers and horsemen, for he was afraid of his brother.

405. And when Gimah heard that Bajazet was king, he came from the borders of Arām unto Asia Minor, and arrived at Boursa§. And he fortified it, and his host became very great. And Bajazet came against him with a strong hand, and arrayed a battle against him. And the host of Gimah was smitten before him, and they fell slain to the

* גִּמָּה.

† זְזֵמוֹן (?) בָּלֶבַעֲמָס.

‡ גִּנְצָאָרִי.

§ Boursa, otherwise called Prusa.

ground in the plain of Boursa ; and much people died on that day. And Gimah fled unto Egypt ; and the sultan assisted him ; and he returned with a strong hand, but was smitten before his brother the second time : and he fled unto Rhodes ; and the master of the priests* sent him unto France. And the king honored him, and sent him unto Rome, for so had the Pope Innocent commanded ; and he honored him, and set a guard over him.

406. And he promised unto Bajazet, not to let him return unto Turkey ; and Bajazet sent him thirty thousand scudi every year. And the King Charles sent him unto Naples ; but he died in the road at Terracina, for he gave him strong and deadly poison. And it came to pass after some days more, that the King Frederick sent his corpse unto his brother Bajazet, in order to find favor in his sight. .

407. And when Ferdinand, king of Naples, heard that Mohammed was dead, he spake unto the captains of his hosts that were at Otranto, saying, “Behold ! your king is dead ; and now give ye me my land, and I will lead you and all that belongeth unto you, upright†, unto your country.” But the Turks would not hearken ; for they believed not his words. And the duke of Calabria

* The grand master of the knights of St. John.

† קוממיות, upright. Lev. xxvi. 13.

drew nigh unto the city, and besieged it; and they battered its walls many days. And the Turks fortified themselves from within; and the night was unto them for watching, and the day for labor. And it came to pass one day, that they fought against it, and went up into the breaches of the wall, and saw what was done in the city: but they returned with shame; and much people died on that day.

408. And when the Turks saw that Achmed, the captain of the host, delayed to come, they made peace with the men of the host that besieged them until they had sent unto Turkey; for they knew not what had become of him. And the messengers returned unto them, saying, “Our king, Mohammed, is dead; and Achmed is yet in Natolia, for he inclineth to Gimah; and Bajazet cometh against them, and a great host with him.” And the men were grieved, and said, “Let us appoint a head, and return unto the land of our nativity: why should we die in a strange country?” And they gave the city unto the men of Ferdinand, and the king and his son sware unto them to send them quickly unto their country, themselves and their property, and the rams, the brazen rams. And they came into the city; and they brake their covenant, and what had proceeded from their lips they violated: the heads of the host they put into

the prison, and the rest of the men they put into galleys ; there were but a few left, whom they gave unto the Hungarians, who sent them away free.

409. And Bajazet subdued all the cities of Asia after he had smitten his brother ; and he dwelt at Boursa several days. And he obtained favor in the sight of all who saw him ; and he returned unto Constantinople ; and all the people of the country were glad, and his throne was firmly established. And he insisted upon seeing the account of the money which was brought into the king's treasury every year ; and he wrote it in a book. And he took the sum of the janissaries ; and he got more soldiers, footmen, and horsemen, and gave them their hire every month*. And he commanded, and his servants were clothed with silk garments, and clothes of divers colors ; and his fame went throughout all the earth : and he went into all the cities of Yavan, and found that a part of Albania was in rebellion when his father died ; and they sought for themselves broken cisterns†. And he sent thither soldiers, and made them servants unto tribute as at the first.

410. And he remembered what Ferdinand, king of Naples, had done, and wrote unto him, saying, “Send back my men, and everything that belongeth

* i. e. They sought help from sources which could not afford it to them. Jer. ii. 13.

† Numb. xxiv. 15.

unto them: and if thou do it not, there shall be war against thee." And Ferdinand feared, and sent them and everything that belonged to them unto Valona; and they returned unto their country.

411. And Bajazet went unto Adrianople, and gathered soldiers in multitudes, and turned his face towards the territories of the Caramanian*; for his soul was embittered, because of what he had done unto him when his father Mohammed died.

412. And the Caramanian was of the remnant of the Turks who were left in Asia; and he reigned over the uttermost part of Asia Minor, near Isauria†, which is Cilicia, wherein is Tarsus on the plain; and the river Cydnus‡ passeth through the midst. And he reigned also over the uttermost border of Armenia Minor, near the Mount Taurus§; and his host contained forty thousand horsemen [מן] all men exercised to war: and they trusted in their chariots, for they were many and very mighty.

413. And Bajazet went with a numerous people and with a strong hand on his journey, by the way of his country, until he reached Bithynia||. And he passed through Phrygia¶, and Dardania**, and

* The person alluded to here and in the next paragraph is probably the prince or general of the Caramanians, afterwards called Abraham, king of the Caramanians.

טוריה †.

סינודת ‡.

תאורו §.

ביטניה ||.

פריגניה ¶.

דארדانيا **.

Ionia*, and Mysia†, and Caria‡, and Lysia§, and Pamphylia||, and Cilicia : he laid up his carriages¶, and pitched his tent there.

414. And when Abraham, the king of the Caramanians, heard that Bajazet was come, he fortified the cities of his kingdom and the defiles, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And he placed himself, with the soldiers who were with him upon the high mountains and in the clefts of the rocks ; for he would not fight at that time. And the men of Bajazet went all that summer hither and thither, according to their hearts' desire, and no man could stand before them in that district. And Bajazet went and encamped against Tarsus, and besieged it, and cast up trenches against it, and the wall fell under it ; and when the men of the city saw that evil was determined against them, they gave the city into his hand.

415. And Bajazet came into the city, but he would not let his men enter, except the men whom they mentioned by name to watch it. And his men ran over the fields of the cities round about, so that they could not sow. And when the inhabitants of the country saw that there was not strength in their hands, they came unto Bajazet,

and said, “Behold, we are thy servants, O lord, our king! take away from us this death.” And the king accepted them, and made them servants unto tribute, and the country had rest.

416. And it came to pass in the first month, that Abraham went to Egypt, unto the Sultan Caribyo*, for assistance; and he sent him soldiers, and gold, and silver; and his camp increased much. And he went out into the field, unto the place which he had chosen.

417. And Bajazet went unto the place where the Caramanian host was, and had sent the brazen rams before him. And they set a battle in array there, and fought all that day; and much people died. And Abraham fought on that day like a hero, like a man of war. And it came to pass at eventide, that he saw his men smitten, and went to assist them; and he ran with his horse into the midst; and they knew him, and slew his horse, and he fell to the ground. But he fought again with all his might, and his sword devoured flesh; but they wounded him, and he fainted and died. And the heart of the men melted away, and became like water; and they fled for their lives. And they pursued after them, and slew of them with the edge of the sword; and the rest were taken

alive. And Bajazet hastened to go into all the cities of Cilicia; and they said unto him, “Behold, we are thy servants!” And on that day he took all the kingdom of Caramania. And he took the number of his hosts; and he gave them their hire; and they went unto the coast of Sati-liah*, and pitched his tent there.

418. And there was a great city nigh unto it, opposite Cyprus, the name of which was Scanderon†, and its king was of the other Turks. And he was an enemy unto the house of Othman, and of the Caramanian, all his days. He had about twenty thousand men riding upon horses, men of war. And he had dealings with the king of Cyprus, and with the priests of Rhodes; and he reigned over his city until this day. And when he heard that Bajazet had smitten the Caramanian, he became afraid, and sore distressed. And when he saw that he could not prevail against him, he went out unto him for peace. And he gave unto Bajazet the cities of his kingdom, and Bajazet gave unto him cities in Natolia to dwell in, sufficient for his support. And Bajazet reigned from Gallipoli unto the uttermost borders of the land of Aram, at that time.

419. And he passed over the mountain of

* שטיליה.

† אִישְׁקָאנְדָּלָרוֹו, Scandron, Alexandretta.

Taurus and went unto Armenia, and took all the cities, which the Caramanian had there. And there arose no spirit in any man before him; and he was exalted above his father, and his government was raised very high. And he put soldiers in that land, with Mustapha Pasha at their head. And Bajazet returned unto Constantinople; and they received him with gladness.

420. And it came to pass at the time when kings go forth to battle, in the first month, that he gathered again his host, and brought them over unto the side of Asia, and they went unto the city of Iconium, where Mustapha, the captain of his host, was. And he turned his face towards Cilicia, to fight against the sultan of Egypt; because he had assisted his brother and the Caramanian. And he took the sum of his hosts, and they that were numbered of them were one hundred thousand horsemen, besides the janissaries, and the footmen.

421. And when the sultan heard that the Caramanian was dead, he became afraid and much distressed. And he sent the mamluks*, whom he had, and at their head Diadaro, the captain of his host, and with them were soldiers of the Arabs in multitude, unto the border of his land, in the land of Aram. And when Bajazet heard thereof, he went unto Tarsus, and the mamluks

* מאמלוקי.

דיאדארו †.

went against him ; and they came also unto Tarsus, unto the place where Bajazet was. And Diadaro came near, and they set the battle in array there, from noon until evening ; and there died much people on that day. And it came to pass at eventide, that Diadaro fell upon them the second time, and the Turks drew back, and Bajazet hastened to their assistance ; and the janissaries withheld the pride of the mamluks. And he commanded, and they gave the signal, and his men drew back with their faces toward the enemy. And they returned unto the camp, and remained there all the night, which was unto them for watching. And there was a great slaughter in the host of Bajazet, on that day. And Colobi* Pasha fled for his life ; and Kirzigli† Pasha, was wounded in his hand, and they seized him, and led him away unto Egypt. The morning dawned, and the mamluks returned, and saw the place where they had fortified themselves, and went their way.

422. And Diadaro, the captain of the host, and the men who were with him, returned unto Haleb†,

* קָלֹבִי.

† קִרְצִינְלִי.

‡ חַלְבָּה דֵּי אֲרָם צוֹבָא : Aleppo, Rabbi Benjamo, p. 59, Soba est Haleb, vulgo Aleppo : sed Peritsol videtur indig-
tare quod Hamath (ab Arabibus etiamnum حَمَّاثَةَ vocata), et
Soba distinctæ fuerint urbes. *Itinera Mundi*, Oxon. 1691. p. 60.

which is Aram Zoba. And they went into all the borders of the Turk, to plunder during the whole summer, and returned unto the land of Aram.

423. And Bajazet and his host went unto the land of Cilicia, and remained there all the winter; and they made peace between themselves: and the war ceased. And he returned unto Boursa, and went unto the land of Yavan, and put judges and officers into all the cities of his kingdom: for by righteousness the throne is established*. And he loved philosophers and wise men; and read their books, and brought them nigh unto himself.

424. And there came men of Yavan unto him in the third year of his reign, and said, "Come with us, and we will give Corfu into thy hand." And he listened unto their voice, and gathered his host, and thought to fight against Walachia, at that time. And ships of the Venetians came from Candia unto Corfu. And when the captain of their host saw the fortification of the city and the weapons of war, they took some of the men of the city and went their way. And when Bajazet saw that his hope was made void, he turned his face toward Walachia, according as he had said. And he sent ships unto the Great Sea; and his hosts he sent by the way of the dry land. And they passed through Bulgaria, and reached

* Prov. xiv. 12.

Walachia. And they took the spoil of [רַמְלָה] those cities. And when the king saw that there was no strength in his hand, he leaned upon the good feeling* of Bajazet; for his fame went throughout all the countries. And he sent messengers unto him, saying, “Thy servant the king sends thee word, ‘Let my soul live, I pray thee; and I will be unto thee a servant, who will bring presents all days to come.’” And he accepted them, and said, “Is he still alive? he is my brother.” And the king abode under his wings; and the country had rest.

425. And Bajazet passed over the river Danube, unto Moncastro†, which is upon the sea-coast, and upon the river Niester. And the city is a strongly fortified city, the mother-city in that district, and Mohammed fought against it a month of days; but he could not stand because of the dreadful cold: so he went his way. And its fame was throughout all the earth.

426. And the men of Bajazet ran over all the fields of the city round about; and the men of the city said nothing, and the city was besieged. And he commanded, and the ships drew near, and blockaded it round about, and battered its walls unto destruction; and the men of the

* מִזְגָּת, Temperament. מִזְגָּת טוֹב, a rabbinical expression for a benevolent or good disposition.

† מְוַנְקָאסְטָרוֹ, Bialgorod.

city fortified themselves, and withheld for their lives. And it came to pass one day, that they drew nigh unto the city, and climbed upon the walls, and those who defended the walls cast them slain to the ground, and there died much people on that day. And they returned again to fight, and there fell also some of the men of the city, and there was but a few left of the many. And Bajazet commanded, and they blew with trumpets*; and returned unto the camp, and remained there during that night. And they proclaimed throughout all the camp, saying, “Ye shall draw nigh for battle to-morrow; and now fear ye not, nor be ye dismayed before them; for the Lord hath given it into our hands.” And when the men of the city heard thereof, they reinforced themselves also, and closed the breaches of the wall. The morning began to dawn, and Bajazet drew near; and they shouted with a great shout; and the sea and the land were moved at their voice: and they approached the city. And he commanded, to give unto them the signal for parley, to see whether he could save them from the evil which threatened them; for his bowels did yearn over its inhabitants, since evil was determined against them; and he cried in their ears, saying, “We will draw nigh unto you to

* Josh. vi. 8.

make war this day, and we will not go off from the city, until God shall give it into our hands: and it shall come to pass, when we shall come thither we will not leave one soul alive. And now, fear ye not: do well, and ye shall be accepted*. Come ye out unto me for peace, and ye shall eat the good things of your country, only that the throne shall be greater, and ye shall be called by my name; and they who will not remain, shall go their way free." And they listened unto his voice, and gave the city into his hand, and they who would not remain went away free; and there was not taken from them even a shoe-latchet. And they came into the city; and he put a garrison in the midst thereof, and took also the rest of the cities upon the sea; and the mouths of the rivers, lest they should come in ships into that Great Sea, except by his consent. And he went on his journey unto the land of Yavan, and dwelt at Adrianople many days.

427. And King Lewis became very great, and was wiser than all the kings who reigned before him in Tzaphrath, and his fame was throughout all the earth. And he had two daughters; and the one became the wife of Pero, duke of Bourbon†, and the second of the duke of Orleans: who is

* Gen. iv. 7.

פָּרֹו דּוֹכָס בְּאַרְבָּאנְצִיא †

that Lewis who reigned afterwards in Tzaphath*. And the king slept with his fathers in the year one thousand four hundred and eighty-three.

428. And his son Charles, whom Charlotte of Savoy bare unto him, reigned in his stead; and he was twelve years old when he began to reign, and his sister Anne was his nurſet†; and all his people were ruled by her words, and by the word of Pero, the duke of Bourbon, her husband. And Lewis of Orleans envied them; and he spake not peaceably unto them; and he enticed a part of the nobles to fight against Charles, and had dealings with the men of Britany; and they arrayed a battle against Charles, in the field of Orleans. And Charles gathered his horsemen and all his host, and went out against them with a strong hand. And Lewis fled before him, and went unto the duke of Alençon‡; and he was an arbiter between them; and they made peace, and both made a covenant together. And he went to bow himself before Charles; but the days were not many during which he was in the king's court, for he feared for his life; and he went unto the city of Belus§: and he fled unto Britany, and abode there.

* Louis XII. † Guardian. ‡ אלקוניאו. § בלס.

Beauce, Belsia, a very fertile province of France, of which Chartres is the capital.

429. And the duke of Angouleme*, and John, the duke of Bourbon, gathered also soldiers to fight against Charles: and King Charles went out against them with a strong hand. And it came to pass, after some days, that they also made peace with Charles; and the war ceased.

430 And Francis, the duke of Britany, died, and his daughter Anne was left after him. And Maximilian, the king of the Romans, desired to take her to wife; for his wife Maria had died in those days. And her counsellors promised to give her unto him to wife. And Charles heard the voice of horses, the voice of a great host, in the land of Britany; and he hastened to go against them with a strong hand: and he took the land of Germitinsit†, and its environs. And it grieved Maximilian much; and he came into the borders of Picardy with a strong hand, and they destroyed the best part thereof. And Charles went out against him; and Maximilian could not do anything, but returned back. And Charles went unto Britany; and they went out against him, and arrayed a battle against him; but they were smitten before him, and fell slain before him to the ground. And Ludovico, the duke of Orleans, was taken alive, and they set a watch over him. And

* אנגולים.

+ נירמייטינס.

Anna, the daughter of the duke of Britany, wept, and made supplication unto him, and did according to all that Charles commanded her, and turned not to the right nor to the left.

431. And Charles put away his wife Margaret, the daughter of Maximilian, and sent her unto her father's house as in her youth*. And he took unto himself a wife, Anne of Britany, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety. And Charles loved her; and she bore unto him sons, but they died.

432. And Granada was in the hand of the Ishmaelites for seven hundred years; and they were as thorns in the side of the kings of Sphard until this day. Now Ferdinand, the king of Sphard, and his wife Isabella, besieged it many days, and builded a fort against it, and houses to dwell in; and the city was besieged. And they gave it into his hand in the month of January, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two; and it has since belonged unto the kings of Sphard unto this day. And the land was widely† extended, and the beauty of all countries.

433. In that year, the exiles from Jerusalem‡ were driven away from Sphard by command of the wicked ones, Ferdinand, king of Sphard, and

* Lev. xxii. 13.

וְתִהְיֶה הָאָרֶץ רַחֲבָת יְדֵיכֶם †

‡ i. e. The Jews.

his wife Isabella, and were thence dispersed unto the four wings of the earth. And they went in ships, whither the wind allowed them to go : unto Africa and Asia, and the land of Yavan and Turkey ; and they dwell therein unto this day. And there came upon them many sorrows and afflictions, and the souls of the people became weary on the way. For some of them the Turks killed, to take out the gold which they had swallowed to hide it ; and some of them hunger and the plague consumed ; and some of them were cast naked by the captain upon the isles of the sea ; and some of them were sold for men-servants and maid-servants in Genoa and its villages ; and some of them [וּמְ] were drowned in the sea. See, O Lord, and behold, whom hast thou afflicted so much that a man should consume his fruit ?* For there were among them who were cast into the isles of the sea upon Provence, a Jew and his old father fainting from hunger, begging bread ; and there was no one to break unto him in a strange country. And the man went and sold his little son for bread, to restore the soul of the old man. And it came to pass, when he returned unto his father, that he found him fallen down dead ; and he rent his clothes. And he returned unto

* i. e. Whom hast thou afflicted so much, that he should eat, or sell in exchange for food, his own children ?

the baker, to take his son, and the baker would not give him back: and he cried out with a sore and bitter cry for his son; but there was none to deliver. All this befell us in the year RABBIM, (“for the sons of the desolate are **רַבִּים** MANY*,”) which is the year five thousand two hundred and fifty-two; yet have we not forgotten thee; neither have we dealt falsely in thy covenant†. And now, O God, be not far off; hasten to help us, O Lord! For thy sake we are killed all the day; we are counted as sheep for the slaughter‡; make haste to help us, O God, of our salvation§, plead our cause, and deliver us||!

434. And also unto them that had changed their glory for an unprofitable one, in the days of the priest, Fra Vincenzo Sadi¶, this Isabella was a Satan in those days. And she set searchers and

* See Is. liv. 1. The sum of the letters in the word **רַבִּים**, taken in their numerical value, corresponds with the number of the year in which the Jews were driven from Spain, A. M. 5252. The Jews habitually omit to express the thousands. Hence Rabbi Joseph calculates as follows:—

$$\begin{array}{rcl} ר & = & 200 \\ ב & = & 2 \\ י & = & 10 \\ מ & = & 40 \end{array}$$

$$= 252.$$

† Ps. xliv. 17. ‡ Ps. xliv. 22. § Ps. xxxviii. 22.

|| Ps. cxix. 154.

פָּרָא יְנַצְּנֹצֹו שְׁדֵי ¶

spies over them, to see if they walked in the law of their messiah or not. And they burned by hundreds of them for no cause ; and all that they had they plundered daily. And thus they began to flee, and to go unto Turkey to serve the Lord our God as at this day.

435. And the Lord was zealous for his people, and gave unto these kings* the recompense of the works of their hands. For their daughter died in Portugal while she was laboring with child ; and her eldest son died in Prague, and there was no male child left to inherit the dominion†. And the queen Isabella became weary of her life, and one half of her flesh was consumed by the evil and lasting plague that is called cancer‡ ; and she died.

436. Joseph the priest saith, “ That expulsion from France, and this expulsion, have induced me to compose this book ; that the children of Israel may know what they have done unto us in their countries, in their courts, and in their palaces ; for behold, the days are coming.”

* i. e. The king and his queen, both of whom were monarchs in their own right.

† There is some confusion in this part of the narrative : Ferdinand and Isabella left no son ; but their daughter Joan, married to Philip of Austria, was the mother of a prince who afterwards reigned as emperor of Germany, sovereign of the Netherlands, and king of all Spain. In Germany he was styled Charles V ; in Spain, Charles I.

437. In Portugal also the destructions * increased ; and the enemies decreed by the power of the sword that none should walk according to the law of Moses, the servant of the Lord. And the Jews took their sons and their daughters, and sent them unto the isles of the sea wherein no one dwelled. And many hallowed the Holy One of Israel† ; but many fell down and worshipped the image‡, and changed their glory for an unprofitable one. And it came to pass, after some days more, that there arose upon the fugitives a priest as a Satan. And it came to pass, when they were in their houses of prayer, that he stirred up against them the inhabitants of the country ; and they arose upon them and killed them, and they had no compassion upon man or woman. And the king was not at Lisbon at that time. And it was told unto the king, and it grieved him much ; and they took the priest, and burned him in fire; and the few who were with him they brought down in blood unto the grave.

438. And many Jews went out from Portugal at that time, and went unto the east country to serve the Lord our God as at the first ; and they have dwelled there until this day. And many were left there halting between two opinions§ : they feared the Lord, yet sware by the image of the

* Baptisms.

† By martyrdom.

‡ Daniel iii. 12, and vii. 14. 27.

§ 1 Kings xviii. 21.

uncircumcised, and went daily unto their churches. And they have increased and become mighty in riches until this day. From that day and afterward, there was not a man left in all the kingdoms of Sphard, who was called by the name of Israel.

439. But the king of Navarre did not expel them from his country, and many of the Jews of Aragon went thither to dwell. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that the men whose heart God had touched, sought to go out from the furnace of iron, for they feared for their lives. And the king of Aragon allowed them to pass, and they came in ships unto Provence, and dwelled in Avignon several days. And there was among them that came, Don Bonafois*, my uncle, and his wife Orositi†, and her mother Dolza‡, as she was in her youth§ in her mother's house, and his sons ; and Don Abraham Official||, and his wife Mirah, and many others besides, whose names I will not note down. And there they found my father, our teacher, Rabbi Joshua, the priest of the priests, who went out from the fortress of Oviedo¶, and they gave him dame Dolza**, my

* בונאפאזיש. † אורהיסיטי. ‡ דולציה.

§ Jewish girls were sometimes married at the age of ten or twelve years, and remained for some time after marriage under their mothers' care. The meaning of the original, however, is not quite clear.

|| אופיציאל. ** אואיטה. ¶ מרת דולציה.

mother, to wife. And they remained there not many days, but went thence unto Turkey ; and they have dwelled there until this day. And it came to pass, after some more days, that the king ordered those who were left in Navarre to depart ; but they could not go out ; for the way had shut them up*. And they changed their glory for an unprofitable one, and were cast away from the Lord the God of Israel. Also the Jews that were in the kingdom of Provence, were ordered to depart ; but they would not go, and wickedly changed their glory for an unprofitable one ; and they have dwelled there until this day. There were not any left in Provence, except those who dwelled at Avignon, and in the cities which the pope had there.

440. And in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-three, Bajazet sent Cadon† Pasha, the captain of his host, to the east of Hungary ; and with him were about eight thousand men riding upon horses ; and they went unto Sabaria‡ ; and plundered whatever they found ; and the terror of the Lord was upon the inhabitants of that country, and they were sore afraid. And the nobles of Croatia and Sclavonia, and Hungary, assembled themselves, and made a covenant against

* i. e. They had no place to go to.

† סדרן.

‡ סָבָרַיָּה, probably Sarwar, a town on the river Raab.

them; and they gathered together soldiers, and went out against him. And Cádon returned unto the mountain Diabolo*, which is between Croatia and Corbavia†; and he pitched his tent there. And there they set the battle in array upon the river Morava†. And Cadon divided his men into three hosts. And Ishmael also, the captain of the first camp, set the battle in array against them; and they were smitten before him, and he pursued after them unto the river Morava; and they fell down from the high rocks in their flight, and died. And Ishmael returned, and set the battle again in array against the second camp. And his companion, Carabilo§ the woywode||, the second captain, also fell upon them; and these slew the camp of the count Juan Torquato¶ with the edge of the sword; and he dismounted from his horse to fight; and they wounded him, and he died. And Cadon Pasha fought against the camp of the Hungarians, and defeated them; and they likewise were smitten before him. And they took Banó**, a nobleman, from Croatia, and killed his son by the sword; and there died much people on that day; but of the Turks only a small number died. And they searched among the dead, and took the

* דיאבלו קורבאביאיה †, a town in Croatia.
 ‡ מורהו קאריבילו § || איבודה ¶
 נואן טורקוואטו ¶ ** בנו.

heads of the nobles, and sent them unto Bajazet to Turkey. And they that died in that slaughter were about seven thousand. And these all fell in one hour.

441. And Galeazzo Maria, the son of Francis Sforza, duke of Milan, was a mighty man of valor; and Bona, the daughter of the duke of Savoy, became his wife; and she bare unto him a son. And he drove away Ludovico, the Moor*, his brother, from him, by the counsel of Chicho Simonita Calabrese†; and they hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him. And he walked in the ways of the cruel Giovanni Maria Visconti, the uncle of his mother, and after the stubbornness of his heart all his days. And he took to himself from the daughters of Milan of all whom he chose, and ravished them, and took their names upon his lips‡. And they hated him more, because [ג] of his adulteries and his words. And they entered into a conspiracy against him: and it came to pass on a day, that they slew him in the church of Saint Stephen, on a day of their calamity§. And there were among the conspirators, Giovanni Andrea Lanfoniano||, Carlo Visconti, and Gerolamo Ulgiato¶. And Giovanni Andrea fled in his haste among

* המורה.

‡ סימוניטה קאלאבריסי.

‡ i. e. He boasted even of his crimes. § See ante, p. 218.

|| لأنפוניאנו.

¶ אולגייטו.

women*, and the Kushite† pursued after him, and killed him. And Carlo also fell slain, and all the city was moved about them, and Gerolamo‡ ran unto his house, and went thence disguised in monk's clothing. But they recognized him, and took him alive, and brought him down in blood unto the grave ; and the country was at rest. And Giovanni Galeazzo sat in the place of his father when he was nine years old, in the year one thousand four hundred and seventy-seven. And his mother was his nurse§ ; and by her word, and the word of his uncle were all his people ruled many days. And when Ludovico heard that his brother was dead, he came unto Lombardy and took Tortona ; and Roberto Sanseverino || was among his helpers. And they made peace between themselves, and he was a pastor¶ unto his brother's son with his mother, Bona ; and his fame was throughout all the earth, for he ruled mightily** over them. And the duke grew up, and they gave unto him to wife Isabella, the daughter of Alphonso, the king of Naples ; and she bare a son unto him. And his days were few and evil, and the star of his

* i. e. He concealed himself among women.

† קָשֵׁשׁ, i. e. the Negro or Ethiopian ; it probably means, in this place, Ludovico Sforza, surnamed the Moor.

‡ גִּרְלִימֹן || סָנְסִיבֶּרְן, § i. e. Guardian.

§ רַזְעָה ¶, herdsman, shepherd ; means here a governor.

** Num. xvi. 13.

fortune withdrew its shining* ; and he was under his uncle Ludovico, as one taken captive by the sword all his days: And he had no more than the name of duke ; and his uncle was the master of all the land, before whom bowed all its inhabitants ; and they feared him much.

442. And when Alphonso saw that Giovanni Galeazzo was grown up, and his sovereignty was not given him, it grieved him much. And he sent messengers unto Ludovico, saying, “ Why doest thou thus unto thy brother’s son ? ” But he turned not his heart unto them ; and they returned unto their house. And Alphonso hated Ludovico, saying, “ Let the wars of my kingdom be at an end ; then shall I know what I shall do unto him : ” and Ludovico observed the thing.

443. And he stirred up against him Charles, the king of Tzaphrath, and put it into his heart to take that kingdom ; for unto him belonged the right of the government. And when the king heard it, he told it unto the wise men who sat the first in the kingdom†. And they said, “ This is nothing marvellous, O king ! ask now the most ancient days‡, and they will tell thee ; for the Normans § who reigned in Sicily and Naples saved that

* וַיָּאֹסֵף מִזְלָוֶת נְגַדָּה, an astrological expression. Compare Joel ii. 10.

† Est. i. 14.

‡ Deut. iv. 32.

§ דְּנוּרָמָנִי.

kingdom from the hand of the enemies of our law*, and brought it back unto the church ; and for this cause have the popes given it unto the house of Tzaphrath twenty-four times, and twice it was given unto the French by two universal synods†." And Charles, the prince of Anjou, also reigned in Sicily by command of Pope Urban the fourth ; and Clement, who arose after him, confirmed it to Charles. And he took that kingdom by his sword and by his bow, from the hand of Manfred, the bastard of the emperor Frederic the second, which they had taken against the law. And there reigned after him, his son Charles, in the year one thousand two hundred and eighty-two, and his kingdom stood firm twenty-five years. And he commanded his house ; and he gave the kingdom of Hungary, which he had inherited from his wife, unto his first-born son, Charles. And unto Robert, his second son, he gave the kingdom of Naples and Sicily. And Robert reigned thirty-three years ; and he begat a son, and called his name Charles ; but Charles died before his father. And Joanna, his daughter, was left after him, and she was as a daughter unto King Robert, and he loved her instead of his son. And he commanded before his death, that Andrea, his brother's son, king of

* דתנו, our law, i. e. our religion.

† עצות פוללות, synodi œcumenicæ.

Hungary, should reign after him ; and they did so. And Andrea reigned ; and he took to wife Joanna, the daughter of the deceased Charles, and went in unto her. But her soul abhorred the king ; and she killed him, and took her kinsman, Ludovico, the prince of Tarentum, in his stead. And they came from Hungary with a strong hand, to execute vengeance for their king ; and the war was strong in Italy at that time, and queen Joanna fled before them, and went unto Provence ; and she gave her kingdom unto Lewis, duke of Anjou, the brother of Charles, king of Tzaphrath. And he passed through Italy in the year one thousand three hundred and eighty-two. But he prospered not ; and the kingdom was left unto Ladislaus. And Gregory, the pope, drove him away, and gave the kingdom unto Lewis, the son of Lewis duke of Anjou. And though the kingdom belonged unto Ladislaus, king of Hungary, by inheritance of Andrea, he gave it the second time unto Charles, the king of Tzaphrath. For Ladislaus died, and had no children ; and his sister Joanna was left after him. And she gave it unto Renato*, the brother of Lewis of Anjou ; and he reigned six years : and Alexander, the pope, supported him in those days. And Pope Martin also

supported Lewis of Anjou, saying, "Therefore, O lord, our king, unto thee belongeth the right of the kingdom! And now, our lord, go and take possession according as it was told thee; for at this time thou shalt obtain the kingdom. And by what shall it be known now, that the Most. High God hath appointed thee? Is it not by thy going to take that which belonged unto the kings who were before thee in Tzaphrath, by the will of the popes who were until this day?" And the thing seemed good in the sight of the king; and he set his heart upon going.

444. In those days died Giovanni Galeazzo, duke of Milan, and his son; and then both their love and their envy perished*: and his uncle reigned in the dukedoms of Ludovico the Moor, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-three, in the tenth month; and his fame was throughout all the land.

445. And King Charles gathered together soldiers, and horsemen, who removed from Tzaphrath, at the end of August, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-four. And he passed through Italy, according to his heart's desire; and there was not one that stumbled in his camps, and the stars of heaven and its planets,

* Ecclesiastes ix. 6.

were among his helpers in that war. And he went unto Pisa, and delivered it from the hands of the wicked, and the violent, and they appointed its counsellors, and its judges, as at first; and they were no more servants unto tribute. And he sent messengers unto Genoa, and they promised to give back unto their hand Sarisana* and Pietra Santa†; but they did nothing of all this. And he went on his journey unto Florence; and the lords of Florence honored him much. And the men of Genoa sent messengers thither because of those cities; but he listened not unto their voice: so they returned.

446. And Alphonso, the king of Naples, heard the report of Charles, who drew nigh unto him with a strong hand; and he feared and was sore distressed, and gave the kingdom unto his son Ferdinand‡; and he took the silver, and the gold, and the precious stones, which his fathers had laid up, and fled before him unto Sicily, in the twelfth month, which is the month Adar§. And Charles, the king of Tzaphath, came near, and Ferdinand could not retain strength before him; and they took Naples in that month. And the King Ferdinand, and his uncle Frederic, and the

* שאריזאנָה, Sarasina, in Romagna, on the frontiers of Tuscany, in the district of Ravenna.

‡ פִּירְנָאנְדִּינוֹ § פִּיאַתְרָה שָׁאַנְתָּה February.

Marquess Pescara*, assembled themselves together in the fortress of Castel Nuovo†, which is in Naples, as before the sword, and one hundred Swiss with him. And they gave up the Jews [נ] who were there, to be plundered at that time. And Charles remained a day or two in the castle of Pozzo Real‡, and entered the city on the twenty-third day of the month of March. And he stationed himself in the fortress at the gate of Capua§, several days. And he took all the cities of that kingdom; and his fame went throughout all the earth.

447. And the Florentines returned to fight against Pisa, to regain dominion over it; and the soul of the men of Pisa became weary in that battle. And they sent unto the men of Genoa for assistance; and they came to their relief at that time.

448. And the princes of the uncircumcised were afraid of Charles, and united themselves with one heart, and made a covenant against him, in the second month, which is the month of April. And there were amongst the confederates Pope Alexander, and Maximilian, the king of the Romans, Ferdinand, king of Sphard, and the

* פישקארה, anciently Aternus, a fortress of the hither Abruzzo in the kingdom of Naples.

† ראסטיל נבו. § פנו ריאל.

men of Venice. And there was also among the confederates who were to fight against him, Ludovico the Moor, duke of Milan ; for the murmurings of the king of Naples were turned away from him, when Giovanni Galeazzo, the duke of Milan, and his youngest son, died ; and the dukedom belonged unto him. And they sent messengers unto him, saying, “ Return unto thy country, and unto thy native place ; and if not, war is declared against thee.” And Charles became afraid in his heart ; but he said nothing to any man. And he placed governors in the cities of the kingdom, after the manner of a king ; and Gilbert Monpensier*, his lieutenant, was unto them a governor. And he hastened to bring back the rest of his men ; for he heard the bleatings of the flocks which came out against him in the way†.

449. In those days, Novara‡ was given unto the dukes of Orleans with subtlety, who put a garrison in the midst thereof. And this was told unto Ludovico, the duke of Milan ; and it grieved him much.

450. And Charles went on his journey unto Pisa, and he purposed to pass over the Apennine

* מונפנסיאירו.

† Comp. Judges v. 16. i. e. He heard of great hostile armaments.

‡ נובאיירה. The principal city of the Novarese, a district of the Milanese territory.

mountains, by the way of Pontremoli*, at that time. And the confederates came out against him with a numerous people and with a strong hand, to Fornovo†, upon the river Taro, which is on the borders of Parma, with the marquess of Mantua, the captain of the hosts of the men of Venice, at their head; and also the host of Ludovico the Moor joined themselves unto them at that time. And Charles was afraid of them, and sent messengers, saying, “I will pass through your country, and will return unto my place and unto my country.” And they said, “Thou shalt not pass through, for we will come out against thee with the sword.” And Charles spake unto the hearts of the soldiers like a hero and a man of war; and they lifted up their voice, and shouted; and they gave the signal for the battle. And the counsel of Giovanni Giacomo Triulzio‡ in war, was as the word of a man of God at that time. And he said unto the king, “Come on, let us deal wisely with them.” And they sent with subtlety forty mules before them, bearing every good thing of the camp; and they went their way. And when the Italians saw them, they departed from their order by tens and hundreds, and pursued after them; and the Albanians, who rode upon horses, followed

* פונטראמנולי, a citadel in Tuscany, on the river Magra.

† פורנו נובו.

‡ טריאולציו.

them ; and there was strife between them. And they slew every one his brother, and every one his neighbour, because of the clothes, and the vessels, and the mules; and there fell of them about one thousand men to the ground, in a short space of time : and their voice was heard afar off. And the king said, “ This is the time to laugh ; ” and he put the battle in array against them, and they were smitten before him ; and there fell about five thousand men to the ground ; many of the nobles of Italy were slain by the edge of the sword, and five of the nobles of the king were taken alive at that time.

451. And Charles also fought in person against Francis, the captain of the Venetians, and their spears were broken. And the king drew his sword ; and Francis could not withstand, but fled before him. And the men of Parma erected there a column ; which has been for a token until this day.

452. On that day, which was the thirteenth day of the month of July, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-five, King Ferdinand took Naples from the hands of the French. And the people of the country helped him. And the fortresses were left in the hands of the king, and they were besieged. And Ferdinand went unto the men of Genoa, and all the people of the country were very glad.

453. And Charles went on his journey unto Asti*, and he fortified Novara, and put soldiers in the midst thereof, and corn, and bread, and victuals, in abundance; and he drove away thence the old men and the sick, and the women and the children, and returned unto his own country, and they received him with gladness. After that he made peace with Ludovico the Moor; for Hercules, duke of Ferrara, father-in-law of the Moor, was a mediator between them; and they gave him back Novara, at that time. And the Moor gave the tower of Genoa into the hand of the duke of Ferrara, his father-in-law, as a pledge. Then came the two servants of the king unto Genoa, to send ships to the assistance of the French, who were left at Naples, in the fortresses. And when they heard that Castel Nuovo was taken, they sent thither no more.

454. In those days, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-six, on the twentieth day of the month of December, which is the month Tebeth; Joseph, the son of Joshua, was born of the priests, who were driven out from Sphard, in the land of Provence, at Avignon, which is on the river Rhone. And my father brought me out from thence when I was five years old, and we have dwelled on the borders of the city of Genoa, until this day.

455. And king Charles thought to return the second time unto Italy with a strong hand; but he could not, for the stars of heaven drew back; and the counsel of the Lord must stand. And he became sick, and died in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-seven. And the years of his life were twenty-seven years, and he had no children; and the nobles chose Lewis, duke of Orleans and Valois*, and made him king; and he sat upon the throne of the kings. And Lewis drove away his wife Joanna, by command of the pope; for she had a blemish† and a hump‡ upon her back: she whom he took out of fear of Lewis, the father of King Charles; and he knew her no more. And he took to wife Anna of Britany, the wife of King Charles.

456. In the beginning of the reign of Lewis, Maximilian, king of the Romans, came into Burgundy, with a strong hand; and they went out against him, and he turned back with shame. And Lewis, king of Tzaphath, made peace with the king of Sphard, and with the king of England; and they made a covenant between themselves.

457. And Lewis knew that he had a right to the dukedom of Milan, by inheritance, from

* יבחרו בלהוביקו דוכס אורהינס ובאלים.

† i. e. A defect.

‡ חטוטרת, gibbus; præsertim gibbus cameli.

Valentina (the mother of his father Charles), the daughter of Giovanni Galeazzo Visconti, the first duke of Milan; for her brother Philip gave her unto Lewis of Orleans, the brother of Charles the sixth, king of Tzaphrath, to wife. And they made a covenant, saying, "If Philip die without children, the dukedom shall belong unto Valentina, and unto her children after her." And the pope confirmed the covenant; for there was no [בָּבָשׂ] emperor in those days; every one did according as it seemed best in his sight.

458. And King Lewis drove away the merchants of Genoa in those days; and they returned unto their own country.

459. And his words were with the Florentines and with the lords of Venice; and he gathered together both a host and horsemen, and he passed over into Italy with a strong hand. And when Ludovico the Moor heard of it, he became afraid, and he also gathered together soldiers, and sent unto Genoa for assistance; and Augustino Adorno and his brother Giovanni were then in the land; but they delayed to send. And Lewis drew near, and he subdued Alexandria and its environs, and his hand was still stretched out; and it grieved Ludovico the Moor much. And when he saw that he could not prevail against him, and that the stone from the wall cried after him*, he turned his face

* Hab. ii. 11.

toward Ashkenaz, and hastened to flee, and sent before him his brother Ascanio*, the cardinal, and his son, and all the riches of his house; and he went after them, and with him were four thousand footmen and five hundred horsemen. And the tower of Milan he gave into the hand of his servant Bernardino di Corte†, and put a garrison into the midst thereof.

460. And Lewis went on his journey and arrived at Milan, and the nobles of the city received him with gladness. And the men of Genoa sent thither messengers, to give the city into his hand. And the king received them on the twenty-sixth of the month of October, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-nine, to become his people; and they made a covenant between themselves. And Augustino and Giovanni Adorno sought to dwell in the city as at the first; but they could not, so went their way. And the king took all the cities of the dukedom in peace; only Cremona was given unto the Venetians; for so they had agreed between themselves.

461. And Bernardino di Corte revolted against his master, and gave the tower into the hand of the king; and he put a garrison into the midst thereof. And he sent some of the soldiers which

he had unto Rome, to assist the Pope Alexander and his son the duke Valentino; and they took Imola and Forli*, and returned unto their country.

462. And Bajazet, the Turk, said, “Who of us are against the Venetians?” And his servants said unto him, “Their consul†, who is here with us, will tell all that we do here this day.” And he commanded that none of the strangers should have a consul in his countries; and he drove them away from before him. And the matter was searched into, and it was found that the merchants of Venice had revealed the matter concerning Corfu; and he took all they had, and put them in prison, and Andrea Griti‡ among them. And he gathered soldiers, and sent them in ships unto the Morea. And he went also on his journey unto the coast of Patras. And he encamped against Lepanto, which was formerly named Naupactus§; and he besieged it many days, and they gave it into his hand at that time. And when Ludovico the Moor saw that the Venetians were among his adversaries, he again stirred up Bajazet against them. And he sent the pasha, Scanderbeg, the captain of his host, by the way of Friuli||, and they arrived suddenly nigh to Treviso¶. And they took all the inhabitants of those cities; and about four thousand souls

* פורלי.

§ ניאופאטו.

‡ אנדריאה גרייש + באילו +

¶ פריבולי ||

טראיויסו ¶

of men, whom they could not lead forth with them, they slew with the edge of the sword by the river Taiamento*. And they came unto the tops of the mountains, and saw Venice, which is situated in the middle of the seas ; and they returned. And Venice was afraid at that time.

463. And it happened, when the year came round, that he went against Modon, and they invested it, and the city was besieged, and there was a very sore famine. And the men of Venice sent into it a large ship, which came unto the city with a high hand. And the governor of Venice commanded the inhabitants of the city to go down to the sea to unlade it of the wheat ; and they all went as one man, joyful and merry in heart, and turned not their heart to the enemies who were encamped round about them. And the thing was known unto Bajazet, and he commanded, and they all drew nigh unto the city, and they went up upon the walls ; but there was no man there. And they went down into the city, and ran about in its streets before the inhabitants could return unto their ward ; and they killed every male. And they took the women and the children, and all their property at that time, on the tenth day of the

* טַאיָמֶנְטוּ. The Taiamento, or Tagliamento, a river in Friuli, which rises in mount Mauro, in the Alps, on the frontiers of Germany, and discharges itself into the Adriatic Sea.

month of August, in the year one thousand five hundred. And the men who were in the fortress could not withstand, and they gave it into the hands of Bajazet, and went their way. And when the men of Coron saw that Modon was taken, they feared much, and sent messengers unto Bajazet, saying, “Behold! we are thy servants.” And they gave the city into his hand; and the men came with peace into the city, and they remained in the Morea until the month Abib*. And they fortified Modon, and raised its walls, and he put a garrison in the midst of it. And they brought men from other cities to dwell there; and he changed the name of the city to Tangari†, that is to say, “God gave it.” And it came to pass in the month Abib, that he sent the captain of his host unto Valona‡, and with him forty thousand men. And they took Durazzo§ in the year one thousand five hundred and one, and returned unto their country.

464. And the heads of the Ghibellines|| sought to throw off from themselves the yoke of the French, and they called upon Ludovico, the Moor, to return unto Milan. And he sent forward the cardinal Ascanio his brother, and the cardinal Sanseverino, to clear the road before him; and

* September.

דורהצו §

טאנגנאיו †

ניבוליני ||

וילנה ‡

they came unto Milan in the month of February in the year one thousand five hundred. And he came after them, and twenty thousand Swiss and Germans with him; and all the people of the country received him with gladness, like a saint, and an angel of God. And they called before him, “Moro, Moro!” and the earth was rent at their voice. And he removed from Milan, and went unto Pavia, and subdued the fortress of Vigevini*; and his fame was throughout all the earth. And he went thence unto Novara†, and besieged it.

465. Then Genoa moved after its order, and they put a garrison into the midst thereof. And the king also sent five hundred men from Provence; and the country was at rest. And Ascanio, the cardinal, wrote unto them words of peace and truth, to bring them back unto himself; but they returned him no answer that they would have his advice.

466. And Ludovico the Moor took Novara. And the French who were in the midst thereof went unto the Mortara‡, for there all the herds were to gather themselves together§; and the fortress of

* ייגיבני, near the river Tessino, the capital of the Vigevanese, in the Milanese territory.

† נובארה.

‡ מורתארה.

§ i. e. There should the hosts meet. Comp. Gen. xxix. 3.

Novara was left in the hand of the French at that time. And Ascanio gathered together soldiers to go with his brother; but Giovanni Giacomo Triulzio, and Tremouille, would not let him pass. And they also gathered together soldiers, and the French came from Romagna, and the king also filled his hand the second time, and sent soldiers from Tzarphath. And they went unto Novara, and besieged it; and Ludovico the Moor went out against them, and would fight, and wist not that his day was come. And the young men, the soldiers, played before them daily. And the Swiss, whom the Moor had [21], spake with the French, as one would speak unto his neighbour; and it grieved the Moor, and he was much afraid, and returned into the city. And he spake kindly unto them, and gave them presents to bring them back unto himself; but they hearkened not unto his voice, and would not fight against the French; but they were all as one man among his adversaries, for there was no faithfulness in them. And Ludovico knew that evil was determined against him by them; and he disguised himself, and put on soiled raiment as one of the lowest, to save his life, and went into the midst of them. And they recognized him in the gate of the city, and took him alive, and delivered him unto the French;

and his men were as though they were not*, every one turned his own way at that time. And they led him away unto Mortaraf, and sent him unto Tzaphrath; and he dwelt there until the day of his death.

467. And his brother Ascanio fled, and the Venetians took him. And they led him away unto Venice, and sent him unto Milan unto the cardinal of Rouen, the lieutenant of the king; and he sent him unto Tzaphrath.

468. And King Lewis became much exalted. And he made a covenant with Ferdinand, king of Sphard, to go to fight together against the kingdom of Naples, and that every one should eat an equal share. And they sent thither the captains of their hosts with a strong hand.

469. And Frederic, king of Naples, heard thereof; and he became afraid and much distressed. And when he saw that he could not prevail against them, he took all the weapons of war and the battering rams which were at Naples, and in all its borders round about, and sold them unto the duke Valentino for thirty thousand ducats. And all the nations were astonished; for no such thing had ever been seen. And he took his wife and the rest of the ladies, and all that he had, and he sent them unto another country,

* כלא דיו.

מורטראפה †.

as at this day. And he went to sea in ships, even unto Tzaphrath; and he bowed before the king, and wept, and entreated him. And the king received him, and spake unto his heart, and comforted him; and he dwelt there many days. And the captains of the hosts of these kings, took all the cities of that kingdom, as a man taketh the tip of the ear*. And they remained together several days. But the French were not there many days, for Ferdinand had violated his covenant. And he sent thither soldiers, and they took all the cities of that kingdom, and they have belonged unto the king of Sphard until this day.

470. And King Lewis commanded, and they gathered soldiers at Genoa; and he brought them down to sea in four great ships and four galleys, and Philip of Cleves, the president of the city, was at their head. And they removed from Genoa in the fifth month, in the year one thousand five hundred and one, and they went unto the coast of Naples to assist the French who were there; but they could not do any thing, for the cities were taken before they came. And Philip was minded to go unto the east country; the Venetians also joined him, and their ships were thirty-four.

471. And they went unto the Archipelago, and arrived at Mytilene, and they plundered the

* See ante p. 143, *note*,

open towns, and encamped against the city itself, and besieged it; and they battered its walls in haste. And the men of the city were much afraid, and sent messengers unto Bajazet; and the king was greatly moved; and the city of Constantinople was in consternation: for the name of the French was great among the nations in those days, and their fame was over all the earth. And Bajazet went to sea; and he girded up his loins, and armed his trained servants, to send them speedily, to save Mytilene. But the French could not do any thing, for their hearts were divided. And the Venetians delayed to send provisions unto them; and there was no bread in all the country. And the wrath of Philip of Cleves was kindled, and he went off from the city; and the French went their way. And it came to pass when they came, that two of the great ships were wrecked in the isle of Citry*, and they went down into the deep like a stone. And only a small number of the men that were in them was saved; and the rest returned unto Genoa with shame.

472. Then the Venetians made peace with Bajazet, and Andrew Griti was the mediator between them; and they gave him back the isle of Santa Maura, which they had taken from him;

and there has been peace between them until this day.

473. And Bajazet went to dwell at Adrianople, in the court of the garden of the king's palace. And they went out and builded the walls of Constantinople, which the earthquake had cast down in those days.

474. And it came to pass, while Bajazet was at rest in his house, in his courts which he had builded, that the Lord raised up Ishmael the Sofi, the son of the daughter of Ausoncasano*, king of Persia. And many nations gathered themselves unto him, and his camp increased much. And he fetched counsels from far off, and spake in the ears of the nations, and sought to explain the Koran, which Mohammed had composed, according as he had devised in his own heart. And he commanded that all the estates and goods should be in common, every creditor that lendeth out unto his neighbour should release it unto the debtor†; that the naked and the hungry might cease from the midst of the country. And nations obeyed him; and he fought against all the people that were round about him, and made them servants unto tribute; and his fame was throughout all the earth. And the chiefs of his hosts ran unto Natalia‡, and all the inhabitants of that country

* אושונקאנשאנו.

‡ נאטוליאה.

‡ Deut. xv. 2.

were afraid of him ; and they accounted him a prophet in those days. And Bajazet sent against them Caragio*, the captain of his host, with a strong hand. And the men of Bajazet were smitten ; and there was a great plague among the people at that time. And they took Caragio, and put him upon a pole† after their manner at Cossiat‡, and he died. And Ali Pasha, the captain of the host of Bajazet, pursued after them, and set the battle in array against them ; and the men of Ishmael the Sofi were smitten, and some fell slain to the ground ; and the rest fled for their lives. And Ali also, the captain of their host, fell slain to the ground in that war.

475. And there arose in Istria, near Venice, a German Jew, whose name was Lemlan§, a foolish and mad prophet, an infatuated man, and the Jews ran after him. And they said, “ Surely he is a prophet, whom the Lord has sent as a prince over his people Israel ; and he shall gather the dispersed of Judah from the four corners of the earth.” And some of the men were inclined to him, and girded themselves with sackcloth ; and every man turned from his evil ways in those days ; for they said, “ Our salvation draweth nigh ; but the Lord, in his own time, will make haste.”

* קָרְאָגִיו.

† i.e. They impaled him.

‡ קוֹצְיָה.

§ לֵמְלָן.

476. Then came King Lewis unto Genoa, in the year one thousand five hundred and two, to view the city; and they went out to meet him, and honored him; and he was glad in his heart. And there was strife, saying, “Who shall go out first?” And all the people of the land said, “The elders:” but the men of rank said, “No, we must go first.” And the president of the city, which the king had there, answered “No; the elders shall go.” And they did so; and the king remained there many days. And many of the nobles of Italy went to bow themselves before him; and they returned unto their own country. This was in the year one thousand five hundred and three.

477. And Pope Alexander the sixth, died, and they chose Pius, and Pius died at the end of twenty-six days; and they chose Pope Julius the second, [גנ] from Savona*, and he was a shepherd unto them for about ten years.

478. And it came to pass in the year one thousand five hundred and four, that the men of Florence oppressed Pisa; and they became weary of their lives. And they sought to give the city unto the men of Genoa; but they hearkened not unto their voice, for they were a perverse generation. And they attacked it again, when

* שָׁאַבּוֹנָה.

the year came round, and cast down its walls ; and they returned back, and many of them fell slain to the ground. And when they saw that there was no strength in their hand, they sent the second time messengers unto Genoa. But they could not do any thing, for their hearts were divided. And the city was given unto the men of Florence; and it has belonged unto them until this day.

479. And it came to pass in the seventh year of King Lewis, that Genoa waxed fat, and kicked* ; and they looked that it should bring forth grapes, and it brought forth wild grapes†. And all the people of the country, and the inhabitants of the open cities which were round about them, arose as one man against the nobles, because of their pride and wickedness, on the eighteenth day of the fifth month, in the year one thousand five hundred and six. And they killed some of them, and laid hand on the spoil ; and the rest fled, and escaped with their lives. And it came to pass after some days, that Philip of Cleves, the lieutenant of the king, went away from them ; for his soul became weary of them ; and his lieutenant was left, and the rabble of the people grieved him with their vanities, and he also went

* Deut. xxxii. 15.

† Is. v. 4.

away from them. Thus they were left like sheep that have no shepherd. And they chose for themselves Paolo of Novi, the dyer*, for a prince. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that the king and the nobles came against them with a strong hand. And they went out against him into the valley of Pozzivera, with a strong hand, on the twenty-fourth day of the second month ; and they were smitten before him, and returned unto the city. And it came to pass on the next morning, that the French went up the mountain, and took the fortress which was there ; and the men of the fortress fled before them, and came into the city ; and the city of Genoa was in consternation.

480. And it came to pass in the morning watch, that they sent messengers, to cast themselves before the king, but they could not speak peaceably unto him. And the cardinal of Rouen said unto them, “The king will not make a covenant with you, for you have sinned a great sin; only the city shall not be given to be plundered :” and the messengers brought them back the answer. And there fell thousands of the rabble of the people at that time.

481. And the king came into the city on the

* יְבָעַ.

twenty-eighth day of the second month*, with his sword drawn in his hand. And the elders of the city went out to meet him, and they bowed themselves unto the ground, and said unto him, "We have sinned; and now, O lord, forgive, we pray thee, according to thy great kindness; and we will be servants unto thee." And he said unto them, "I have forgiven you: arise and go your way." And they arose; and he returned the sword into the sheath, and they all went into the city. And also the virgins, clothed in linen garments went out to meet him, and cast themselves at his feet; and the king repented of the evil that he had said he would do.

482. And it came to pass one day, that the king stood by a pillar, and they sware unto him, to be servants unto him; and all the people stood to the covenant, and they lifted up their hands towards heaven. And the king burned the book of the first covenant, and it grieved them much. And the city he fined one hundred thousand scudi of gold, current money with the merchants. And he commanded, and they builded a new tower on the top of the mountain Spar†, and they call its name Resan‡ until this day. And the house of Paolo of Novi, whom they had chosen for a

prince, and the house of Paolo Baptista Giustiniano they cast to the ground ; and they were a continual heap for many days. And Paolq fled from Novi, but was taken as he went unto Rome ; and they delivered him into the hands of those who sought his life ; and they took his head from off him, by command of the king, on the fifteenth day of the fifth month, in the year one thousand five hundred and seven, and killed him on that day : and he went down in blood unto the grave. And also Demetrio Giustiniano they brought down in blood unto the grave at that time.

483. In those days came Ferdinand, king of Sphard, with twenty galleys, unto Genoa, in the fourth month. And they shewed him the charger* which they had. And he went unto Savona, and the King Lewis received him with gladness. And they rejoiced in friendship several days ; and each departed from his brother.

484. And Ludovico the Moor died in prison, in Tzarphath, in the year one thousand five hundred and eight, and was buried there.

485. And Ferdinand, the king of Sphard, gathered together soldiers, and sent them in ships unto Bugia†, which is in Barbary ; and they took it, and the inhabitants of the city went into

* קערה, vase, dish, vessel. Compare page 80.

† בונואה.

captivity, and the people fled from the city. And the Jews also, the inhabitants of the country, and they who joined them after they were driven away from Sphard, went captive before the oppressor at that time, in the year one thousand five hundred and nine. And the land, which was as the garden of Eden, was left desolate, and they cast its houses down to the ground; and they made of it a small city, which has belonged unto the Spaniards until this day.

486. In those days, there assembled together with one heart at Cambray, Julius, the pope; Maximilian, the king of the Romans; Lewis, king of Tzaphrath; and Ferdinand, king of Sphard. Alphonso also, the duke of Ferrara, joined them to fight against the Venetians, because of the cities which they had taken by force from all the kings of the nations round about; and they made a covenant between themselves.

487. And they promised restore back Servia, and Ravenna, and Rimini, and Faenza, unto Julius: and unto Maximilian, Vicenza*, and Treviso†, and Verona, and Padua†, and all the district of Friuli: and unto the king of Tzaphrath, Gradara§, and Cremona, and Crema, and

* עינצה.
† פונדאה.

טְרִיבִיסֹואַה †.
גְּרָאָדָאַה §.

Bergamo, and Brisa*: and unto Ferdinand, the cities of Apulia, which King Frederic had given them as a pledge: and unto Alphonso, Rovigo†, and all the district of Polesino‡, and the cities of Mantua, unto their masters, and they persisted in the covenant.

488. And the first was Lewis, and he gathered many soldiers: and the men of Venice also gathered soldiers. And Nicolo, the count of Petilliano§, and Bartolommeo of Liviano||, the captains of their hosts went and cast down Trevi¶ to the ground. And the king passed over the river Ada, and took Rivolta** with a strong hand. And he came unto the plain of Gradara, and the Venetians came out against him. And they set the battle in array there on the fourteenth day of the month of May, and the earth was rent at the sound thereof. And the Venetians were smitten, and turned the neck, and Bartolommeo, the captain of their host, was taken alive; and they who died in that slaughter were sixteen thousand. And they gave unto the king, Brisa, and Crema, and Cremona, and Bergamo, and their villages,

* בריסה, perhaps Brescia, the capital of Bresciano, in the territory of Venice.

† רוביינו.

‡ פוליסינו, the Polesino, or district of Rovigo.

§ פיטליאנו. || Leghorn. ¶ טריבי. ** ריבולטה.

at that time. And he went unto Peschiera*, and called unto it for peace; but the men of Peschiera would not listen. And the enemy besieged it, and cast down its walls, [נָה] and took it; and the nobles, who were in the midst thereof, they brought down in blood unto the grave. And they put a garrison into the midst of it; and the king returned unto Milan with gladness.

489. And Maximilian sent the duke of Frankfort, unto the cities of Friuli; and he took Goritia†, but not with a strong hand. And he went unto Trieste‡, and unto Tzividal§, and besieged it, and the city was besieged. And Giovanni Paolo Balivon ||, the captain of the horse, went to save it. And they departed from it, and returned unto their country.

490. And Maximilian drew near, and the terror of the Lord was upon all the inhabitants of the cities before he came. And they gave unto him Vicenza, and Treviso¶, and Verona, and Padua, yet their hands were not weakened thereby; and he put a garrison into the midst of them. And the captains of the hosts of the lords of Venice fled before them, and went unto Mestri**, and fortified it; and they put their trust in God. And it came to pass after some days, that Treviso returned

* פִּסְקִיּוֹה.

† גּוֹרִיטִיא, Goritia, Görz or Görz, a county and town on the frontiers of Friuli.

‡ טְרֵיַאִיסְטִּי.

§ צְווִידָאַל. || בָּאַלְיוֹן. ¶ טְרֵיַבִּיס. ** מִיסְטִרי.

unto the men of Venice, for the marquess of Filizaro* gave it into their hand ; and it has belonged unto them until this day. And their words were with the priest of Sanzint†. And it came to pass on a day, that they sent them waggons filled with straw unto Padua with subtlety. And they set Andrea Griti and his men as an ambush. And it came to pass, when they came into the city, that he took off the wheels of one waggon, and it fell and remained in the entrance of the gate, and the ambush which was there came and took the entrance. And the soldiers followed them, and took the city before their coming was known. And when the Germans, the watchmen of the city heard it, they cried, “ Treason ! treason ! ”‡ And they girded themselves with weapons of war, and ran out against them : but they could not do any thing ; for the Venetians made haste, and came first into the market-place of the city. And the inhabitants of the city came to their assistance ; and they called with a loud voice, and all the city was moved. And the Germans fled into the fortress, and fortified themselves therein. And they gave the friends of the emperor, and the Jews, to be plundered at that time. And they besieged the tower, and cast up a trench against it ; and the

* פִּילִיצָאַרְוּ

† סָונְצִין.

‡ 2 Kings, xi. 14.

men of the tower gave it into their hands ; and they sent some of them unto Venice ; and some of them they sent away free.

491. And the emperor sent Francesco Maria, the duke of Urbino, and his host, with the French unto Romagna ; and they took the convent* and burned it with fire. And they besieged Rosai†, and fought against it ; but they could not prevail against it, though they besieged it many days. And they went unto Brisigilo‡ ; and Giovanni Paolo of Anfaron§, the governor of Venice, went to save it ; and he found them marching into the field with great power. And he set the battle in array against them, and they slew his horse, and took him alive ; and his men were smitten ; and some of them fell to the ground, and the rest fled for their lives ; and many were taken at that time, and they took the city, and gave it to be plundered, and set a garrison in the midst thereof. And the soldiers returned unto the duke, and they placed before him Paolo of Anfaron ; and he received him and honored him at that time : And they returned to fight against Rosai ; and Giovanni Greco, the captain of the horse, fell upon them in the darkness of the night ; and he also

* קְוִינְגִינְטֹו.

‡ בְּרִישִׁינְיָלו.

† רֹסָאֵי.

§ אַנְפָרָן.

was smitten before them, and they took him alive ; and it grieved the men of Venice much. And when they saw that they had no strength in their hand, they went out unto them for peace ; and they gave it into their hand, and it was not plundered. And the duke came unto Ravenna, and offered unto them conditions of peace ; but they would not listen. And they fought against it ; but could not prevail against it : and so they did many days. And when the Venetians saw that they had no strength in their hand, they sent messengers unto the pope, saying, “ We will give thee the cities of Romagna ; only take away from us this death.” And the pope received them ; and they gave him the cities of Romagna ; and they made peace between themselves.

492. And the nobles of Venice fortified Padua ; and they gathered together soldiers, and put into the midst thereof bread and victuals, and weapons of war in abundance, and the country was at rest. And it was told unto Count Nicolo Petiliano, “ Francesco, the marquess of Mantua, cometh with a strong hand into the country of Verona.” And they sent thither also soldiers, who fell suddenly upon them in Isola della Scala* in the darkness of the night. And they set the battle in array there, and

* אִיסּוֹלָה דַי לְאַסְקָאַלָה, probably Isola della Scala.

the men of Francesco were smitten before them, and they turned their back, and the men of the place took Francesco in the field; for he was hidden unclothed. And they sent him unto Padua on the eighth day of the month of August, and thence unto Venice; and they put him into prison.

493. And it was said unto them, “Is not Count Guido di Rossi in Lingara?”* And they sent thither, and set the battle in array there; and took him alive, and sent him unto the lords of Venice, and put him in prison.

494. And Maximilian gathered a very great host, and those of them that were numbered were one hundred and twenty thousand. And they came unto Padua on the seventeenth day of the month of July, in the year one thousand five hundred and nine, and besieged it many days. And the men of the city fortified themselves, and took the sum of their hosts, and divided the walls†. And Maximilian drew near, and called unto it for peace; but they derided him, and would not listen. And it grieved him much. And he commanded, and they battered its walls round about, and the earth was rent at the sound thereof. And they fought against it daily; but could not prevail against it; and some of them fell there slain.

* לינגרדה.

† i. e. They assigned to every besieger his point of attack.

And when he saw that he could not prevail against it, they arose from it on the second day of the month of October, and returned unto Vicenza, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And also in all the rest of the cities and the fortresses which he took, he put soldiers and fortified them at that time. And he blessed the people, and they returned every one unto his home*, and he went on his journey and returned unto his own country.

495. And Andrea Griti, the captain of the Venetian host, went against Vicenza in the year one thousand five hundred and ten. And the men of the emperor heard thereof, and fled before them, and they went unto Verona ; and the Venetians came unto the city, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And they went unto Verona, and besieged it many days. But they could not maintain themselves ; and they arose from it, and went unto Soavit, and dwelled there until the month Abib.

496. And the princes of Venice said, “ The time to act is come.” And they sent their hosts in ships unto the borders of Ferrara, and the galleys were seventeen ; and the small ones were without number. And they gave all the cities through which they passed to be plundered,

* i. e. He disbanded the rest of his army.

שׁוֹאָבִי †

and took all their property. And they went unto Comachio* and slew all its males, and burned it with fire; and the duke trembled greatly. And he went out against them, and arrayed a battle against them daily. And the galleys drew nigh unto Ferrara, and the city was besieged. And it came to pass one day, that they suddenly discharged guns against the besiegers, and cast stones upon them; and the river Po, and the dry land, trembled at the sound thereof; and the sound thereof was heard afar off. And they left the galleys as they were, and fled in the small boats as they could, for evil was [נו] determined against them; and as for the rest, their lives were unto them a prey. And when the captains of the Venetian hosts heard thereof, they returned unto Padua; and they, also, who went unto the Polesino†, assembled themselves together there at that time. And the captains of Venice made peace with Julius the pope, and sent unto him the marquess of Mantua free; but his heart continued cold; for there was no faithfulness in them.

497. And Julius, the duke of Urbino, sent the captain of his host unto Bologna, and the French went to save it from his hand. And they set the battle in array there daily. And the Venetians

* קומאכיו.

† פוליסינו.

joined the duke of Urbino, and remained near Bologna several days. And the duke of Urbino returned unto Ravenna. And the French fell upon the hosts of Venice that were left, and smote and discomfited them ; and many fell slain to the ground at that time. And the rest fled before them naked unto Padua ; and they were not ashamed, for every thing that a man hath he will give for his life*. In those days, while the French were before Bologna, the Griti† and his host went against Verona ; and the French took Bologna at that time. And he departed from Verona, and returned unto Padua ; for he was afraid of them ; and they fortified themselves in the midst thereof. And the French returned and encamped against Treviso‡, and besieged it many days ; but they feared them not, for it was fortified.

498. And it came to pass, as Julius longed for Bologna, he made a confederacy with the king of England, and with the king of Sphard, and with the nobles of Venice, to fight against Lewis. And the decree was given at Venice, and all the people of the country were glad. And the men of Tzaphrath departed from Treviso§, and went unto the borders of Verona. And the host of Julius and the

* Job. ii. 4.

הַגְּרִיטִי

† Spelt here, טָרִיבֵיו.

טָרִיבֵיס

Spaniards went unto Bologna, and besieged it many days.

499. And the lords of Brisa* sent the prince Aloysius Avogaro† unto Venice, and gave the city into their hand. And the Griti and his host went thither, and put a garrison into the midst thereof. And the men of Tzarphath who guarded the city, fled unto the fortress, and remained there. And Giovanni Giacomo Triulzia, the captain of the king's host, went thither, and encamped over against it; and the city was besieged.

500. And the king of England died, and his son Henry reigned in his stead, on the thirteenth day of the month of March, in the year one thousand five hundred and ten. And they put the royal crown upon his head in the city of London; and his kingdom was firmly established. And he feared the sons of his uncle, and put Edmund, the duke of Suffolk, in prison, whose brother Richard escaped unto France, and abode there. And it was found out that the sons of his uncle sought to lay hands on the king, with Imsophah‡, and with Idotlah§; and the *royalists* smote off the heads of *the rebels*; and these three went down to the grave with blood||.

* בריסה. † אלויס אונגארו. ‡ אימסופה.

§ אידוטלה. || The statements of this paragraph are incorrect.

501. And Ferdinand, king of Sphard, gathered men, and went in ships unto Tripolis, which is in Africa, and took it in the year one thousand five hundred and ten. And the city went into captivity, and their cry* went up toward heaven. And the Jews also, who were there in multitudes, went captive before the oppressor; and all beauty departed from Tripolis at that time†. And unto the silver and gold and precious stones and clothes, which they took, there was no number, for it was a great city before God‡; and her hour of visitation came upon her at that time§. And the city was left late; and they cast down its houses to seek after treasures. And it became a perpetual heap, that shall no more be rebuilt. And they made a tower in the midst thereof, and gave it unto the priests of Rhodes; and they abode there until this day. And the wretched Jews they led forth captive unto Naples; and there died of them much people for want of every thing, before they were ransomed. And some of them were ransomed at Rome, and they have dwelt there until this day.

502. And the ships of Ferdinand went unto the isle of Girbi||, and the Ishmaelites stopped up the wells before they came; and the people thirsted for water. And they set the battle in array

* The cry of the captives. † Lam. i. 5, 6.

‡ Jonah, iii. 3. § Jer. xlvi. 21. נידבי ||.

there; and they fell smitten to the ground, for they were exhausted; and the Ishmaelites made a great slaughter* among them. And they who died in that slaughter were about four thousand men. And Don Garcia* also, the captain of their host, fell slain in that battle; and the rest returned unto their country with shame.

503. And the Griti fortified Brisa, and spake unto the hearts of the men who were with him; and they remained on their ward many days. And the men of Tzaphrath fought against it, and battered its walls round about, and the earth was rent at the sound thereof. And the men of the city also filled their hand, and threw stones upon them; and there fell of them much people. And it came to pass on a day, that they drew nigh unto the city, and came unto the citadel with a high hand; but they went against them and drove them away. And Giovanni Giacomo Triulzia and the captains of the host, and the men who were with them, hastened, and came into the city with a strong hand the second time. And they went unto the market-place of the city, and set the battle in array there, and many fell slain to the ground. And when the Albanians saw that there was no strength in their hand, they brake the wall; and they and their horses went out and fled. And

* גָּרְצִיאָה.

when they who were left without, saw the breach* which they had made, they came into the city; and there arose no spirit in any man before them; and they went into their streets: and all the city was moved about them. And the men of Tzarpinth who were in the fortress went out with a high hand; and the war was strong against the Venetians both before and behind them at that time. And Frederic, the captain of the horse, went against them; and they killed him, and many of the officers of the hosts were taken alive; and they put them in prison. And its inhabitants threw away their weapons of war, and went out to meet them, and said, "We have sinned." And also the Griti, the captain of the host, was taken alive; and they set a watch over him. Also the Count Aloysius Avogaro†, who gave the city unto the men of Venice, was taken in their pits, after he had fought like a hero, a man of war. And it came to pass on the next morning, that Giovanni Giacomo, the chief of the host, commanded, and they took off his head from him in the market-place of the city, and brought him down in blood unto the grave. And the Griti and the rest of the prisoners he sent unto Milan. And Monseigneur de Foix‡, the lieutenant of the king, received him and honored him, and sent him unto the king into Tzarpinth;

* מחתית.

† אונגארו.

‡ מנסיניאור די פוייס.

and he dwelt there many days. And there died in the midst of the city about three thousand men in that battle. And they gave the city to be plundered, and the women were lain with; and their cry went up towards heaven.

504. And the nobles of the Venetians sent to tell it unto the men of the host whom they had sent with the men of Sphard, and the host of the pope against Bologna. And they departed from it, and went unto the borders of Ferrara. And from Venice also they sent in ships, by the way of the river, much people; and they gave all the inhabitants of the plain to be plundered, and burned the houses with fire; and every one who was found was pierced with the sword. And they took Argenta*, and fought also against Mirandola, and took it. And they fought against the fortress which the Duke Alfonso had made in Crispino; but they could not prevail against it. And they returned unto Bologna, and besieged it many days. And the men of Bologna sent unto the lieutenant of the king, who was at Milan, for assistance; and he hearkened unto their voice. And Giovanni Giacomo Triulzia† [טְרִיאוֹלְצִי] the captain of the host, and the nobles who were with him, went there with a strong hand. Also the duke of Ferrara joined them;

* ארנינטה, a town on the Po Primaro, north east from Bologna,

† Spelt here טְרִיאוֹלְצִי.

he was an arm unto the inhabitants of Bologna.
Selah!*

505. And the lieutenant of the king of Sphard, and the confederates of Julius heard thereof and left it, and went unto Ravenna, and pitched their tents there, and fortified themselves round about. And the inhabitants of Bologna went out with a strong hand into the field; and they went with the French and the duke of Ferrara unto the coast of Ravenna at that time. And they pitched their tents far off from the camp of the confederates about twice two thousand cubits, and remained upon their ward at that time. And they sent some of the soldiers unto Ravenna to expel from that place the men of Sphard, who had fortified themselves there; but they could do nothing, for the men of Sphard were warlike men, and stood as yesterday and the day before.

506. And Fabricio Colonna and his men went out from the city, and marched unto the camp of the confederates at that time. And it came to pass on the sabbath-day, that they spake unto the hearts of the soldiers; and they appointed captains of the host over the head of the people.

507. And it came to pass on the next morning, on the first day of their passover†, in the year

* i. e. He helped the Bolognese. Compare Ps. lxxxiii. 8.

† Their passover, is the Easter of the Christians, in contradistinction to the Jewish passover.

one thousand five hundred and eleven, that Monseigneur de Foix* the lieutenant of the king, and the duke of Ferrara, and the men of Bologna, and the nobles who were with them, went out into the field with a strong hand, and gave the signal for the battle. And the lieutenant of Sphard and the confederates went out against them, and sent before them waggons filled with soldiers, which they had built wisely, so that they could drag them themselves; unto the place wherever one would wish to go, they could go, by wheels which they had put inwards; and ont he top were destructive weapons of war: and whithersoever they turned, they did mischief: their like had not been made until that day; and the confederates went behind them. And the French drew back. And Monseigneur de Foix and the princes who were with them ran to assist them; and they set the battle in array there, and many of them fell slain to the ground. And the men who were in the waggons made a great slaughter among the French, who left the battle-array and fled. They were yet fighting, when Alfonso, the duke of Ferrara, arrived; and he discharged against them guns, and cast heavy stones; and the earth shook at the sound of them; and there fell many of the people. And the men

of Sphard fled at their voice, for they knew not whence that great evil was come upon them suddenly : as for the rest, their life was unto them for a prey. And of the men of Tzaphrath also, there fell to the ground at that time many and honorable men. And the men of Tzaphrath pursued the men of Sphard unto the walls of Ravenna : and they took it, and gave it to be plundered ; and the cry of the inhabitants went up toward heaven ; and they that died in that slaughter were twenty thousand men. And also Monseigneur de Foix the lieutenant of the king, and many of the nobles who were with him, died in that slaughter ; and of the confederates also many died. And Fabricio Colonna was delivered unto the duke of Ferrara ; and Giovanni Cordona*, and the marquess Pescara†, and many nobles and honorable men were sent at that time in captivity to Milan.

508. And the dread of God was upon the cities round about; Imola, Faenza, and Forli‡, were given unto the French in those days.

509. And Bajazet was old, and stricken in years ; and he desired to make his first-born son, Achmed, king in his stead. And Achmed came from the place where he was, and bowed himself to the ground before the king ; and the king embraced

* קורדונה.

† פישקארה.

‡ פורלי.

him, and kissed him on his forehead ; and they rejoiced together. And the king gave unto him gifts after a royal manner, and he abode with his father several days. And the king blessed him, and said unto him, “ Go in peace :” and he bowed himself to the ground and returned unto his country. And when Selim*, his lieutenant, heard the report concerning his brother, and how the king had exalted him, it grieved him much. And he also departed from Trebisond, and came before the king, and bowed himself to the ground. And the king said, “ What hast thou here†, and what has brought thee hither ?” and his wrath was much kindled against him. And Selim answered, saying, “ I am come to see thee, my lord, O king, according as my brother hath done, that thy soul might bless me ; for my soul longed to see thee alive :” and the wrath of the king was appeased‡. And he came nigh unto the king and kissed his feet ; and the king embraced him, and kissed his forehead, and gave unto him gifts. And they went into the chamber, and Selim sat within the king’s gate several days§. And it came to pass on a day, that the king said unto him, “ Return unto thy place ;” but he hearkened not unto him. And he remained with the janissaries and the soldiers, in order to

* סְלִימָן. † Is. xxii. 16. ‡ Esther vii. 10.

§ i. e. Selim remained for some time at court.

find favor in their sight ; and he gave them gifts and precious things ; and they loved him much.

510. And it grieved Bajazet ; and he commanded, and they said to Selim, “ Why dost thou transgress the command of the king ?* ” And it came to pass after they had thus spoken to him daily, and he would not hearken unto them ; that they told it unto the king, and it grieved him much ; and his wrath burned within him. And he commanded ; and they said unto him, by order of the king, “ Go in peace, and if not, know that evil is determined against thee†.” And Selim went out, and went unto the borders of Servia, four days’ journey‡, and he abode at Skavakarah§, and fortified himself in that place. And he purposed to gather soldiers to fight against Hungary, and abode there many days. And he took all the silver that was brought into the king’s gate||, from Yavan, and from Dalmatia and Bosnia¶, and from Servia, and from Bulgaria, and put it in safety. And he gathered soldiers, footmen and horsemen, and gave them their hire in full money ; and his fame went throughout all the earth ; and they came unto him from afar. And his camp increased ; and it grieved Bajazet much. And he sent messengers unto him ; and they spake unto

* Esther iii. 3, 4. † Esther vii. 7. ‡ Jonah iii. 3.

§ בָּסִינָה ¶ אַנְקָרָה || i. e. *The treasury*, in this place.

his heart by command of the king ; but he hearkened not unto their voice. And he gathered together soldiers in multitude. And Bajazet said, “ I will go unto Constantinople, for I will not fight against my son this day ;” and he and his men that were with him went on their journey. And Selim delayed not to pursue after him, and he overtook them, and fell upon them suddenly. And the king sent unto him, saying, “ Remove from behind me, lest it be bitter for thee ;” but he would not hearken unto his voice, and smote all the hindmost that were feeble*. And Bajazet said unto his men, “ Pursue that son of a perverse† and rebellious woman‡; for she bare him in whoredom. And they hearkened unto the voice of the old man, and fell upon the men of Selim in a burning wrath ; and these were smitten before them, and fled. And the riders upon blood-horses§ pursued after them, and defeated them with the edge of the sword. And Selim fled all that day and all the night, and went upon the borders of Varna, which is upon the high mountains of Bulgaria ; for he feared for his life. And the king went unto Constantinople, and sent to fetch Achmed ; for he

* i. e. The feeble in the rear. Deut. xxv. 18.

† נָוֹתָר. ‡ רְכַשׁ. § 1 Sam. xx. 30.

‡ רְכַשׁ, Esther viii. 14. The authorized version translates this word *mules* ; but Gesenius explains it by, *equorum generosior quadam species.*

was the beginning of his strength: unto him belonged the right of the first-born*.

511. And when Korkud†, his third son, who was at Magnesia‡, heard what Selim had done unto his father, he disguised himself, and went to sea, and came unto Constantinople in ships; and he went also before his father, and bowed himself before his face to the ground. And he said unto the king, “Remember, I pray thee, my lord, O king, that they have set me first upon the royal throne. And thou, my lord, didst swear unto thy servant, saying, ‘My son Korkud shall rule after me, and shall sit upon my throne.’ But now when [גַּת] Achmed shall reign, he will kill me. And now let my life be precious in thy sight. Why should thy servant die like one of the vain fellows§, for the guilt would be upon my lord?” And Bajazet embraced him, and kissed him, and spake unto his heart, and comforted him, and gave him gifts, and blessed him; and he abode with his father several days; and the king gave unto him four swift ships, and sent him away from him: and he returned unto his country.

512. And when Bajazet heard that Achmed was come, he commanded, and many ships made haste to bring him over; and he came on his

* Deut. xxi. 17. † קורקוט. § מנישאה. § כאחד הרים. 2 Sam. vi. 20.

journey unto Scutari, which is upon the sea opposite. And the king commanded the nobles and the janissaries to go to meet him, to receive his face ; but they would not hearken, for their soul was weary of Achmed ; and they chose Selim, for he was hunting with his mouth* ; and when from afar he smelled war, his heart became like the heart of a lion. And they cried with a loud voice, and ran, and plundered the house of the cadi, and the house of the two who beheld the face of the king. And they ran to the sea, and plundered all the ships which the king had prepared ; they left no gleanings. And they went unto the king's gate, and called with a loud voice, “ Let Selim come, and kiss the soles of the king's feet ! ” And Bajazet was greatly afraid, and said, “ Let there be given gold and silver unto them, to make Achmed king ; ” but they would not listen. And when Bajazet saw that Selim was set on

* בֵּין צִדְבָּפְנֵי. Gen. xxv. 29. Literally, *for venison was in his mouth*; or, as it stands in the authorized version, *because he did eat his venison*. This passage belongs to those which Rabbi Joseph employs in a sense entirely different from that of the Bible, viz. *a hunting was in his mouth*, i. e. he endeavoured to gain by flattery. The same sense is ascribed to these words by Jarchi, and other commentators, who assert that Esau hunted, after the approbation of his father, with his mouth; for instance, by enquiring how much tithe he had to pay from straw, after the tithe of the whole shocks had already been taken; and how he had to give tithes of salt; so that his father supposed Esau to be very particular in the observance of the commandments.

mischief*, he spake unto their hearts, to bring them back unto him ; but they hearkened not unto his voice. And the king said, “ Do you as it seemeth best in your sight.” And they sent Agad†, the janissary, and the rest of the nobles unto Selim ; and he came quickly. And the janissaries, and they who rode upon the swift horses, and much people who were with them, went out to meet him, and they bowed themselves before him, and brought him into the city, and cried before him, “ Let the king live ! ” And he sat upon the throne of the kings, and they put the royal crown upon his head ; and he made a covenant with them, and the city of Constantine was joyful and glad.

513. And he sent unto his father, saying, “ Let it not be grievous in thy sight, my father, and let thy heart not become faint ; for I am not come in rebellion, nor for any evil ; for I was called, and will be unto thee a son ; and thou, my lord, shalt be unto me a father, and a master, all the days. And now consent, I pray thee, to follow after the multitude†, that thou also mayest say, ‘ I have done it ; ’ and I will not deviate from thy command all days *to come*.” And Bajazet said, “ Let thy coming be in peace. And now, my son, be

* בַּרְעַ הוּא. Exod. xxxii. 22.

† אֲנָאֵךְ.

† i. e. Yield to the desire of the people who wish me to be their king. Exod. xxiii. 2.

strong and courageous ;" for the thing came forth from the Lord, and who may say unto him, "What doest thou?" And Bajazet sent two of those who were nigh unto him, to bow before the King Selim, in his name. And it came to pass in the morning watch, that himself also came into the city to see Selim, and bowed himself to the ground, and kissed his feet. And Selim raised him up, and embraced him, and kissed him, and they went into the chamber and talked together, and went out. And it came to pass as they went out, that he said unto his son, "Let me return, I pray thee, unto the court of the Demoticos†, which I have built for myself at Adrianople." And he said, "Go, my father, dwell where it seemeth best in thy sight; for all cometh from thee." And they departed one from the other; and he dwelt there several days. And Bajazet returned to see his son, and blessed him, and went away from him in peace. And he went on his journey unto the borders of Adrianople, and became sick in the way, either of trouble or of poison, and died in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty-two.

514. And when Achmed heard that Selim was king, he returned unto Boursa; and he removed thence and went unto Natolia. And he went unto

* Job ix. 12.

הרים מוטיקו †

the mountain of Tabrah*, unto the mountains which belonged formerly unto Caramania, and fortified himself on the lower part of the mountain. And he put there corn, and bread, and weapons of war, in abundance. And he said, "Here I will abide, and we shall see what the day will bring forth; for God is righteous: He putteth down one, and setteth up another†."

515. And Selim took of the silver, which his fathers had laid up, and gave it unto the soldiers, according to their heart's desire; and he commanded, and they were clothed with coats of mail. And he put a garrison in all the cities of Yavan, and passed over unto Bithynia, and went to the borders of Lycaonia and Cappadocia, with a strong hand, to fight against his brother Achmed. And he went unto the place where Achmed was; and they gave the signal for battle. But Achmed would not fight; and Selim dwelled there many days.

516. And his strength was consumed in vanity; and he arose from him, and went unto Magnesia, to fight against Korkud, his second brother. But Korkud did not gather together soldiers; for he walked in the simplicity of his heart, and he dwelled securely. And Selim went quickly, and

* טבריה, Taurus?

† Ps. lxxv. 7.

no man knew of his coming ; and Korkud fled before him. And he disguised himself, and went to sea to pass over unto Rhodes ; but he could not, for the ships of Selim hunted his footsteps, so that he could not go ; and he hid himself in a forest, and abode in a cavern many days. And he ate honey, and the roots of trees, in those days. And Selim commanded, and they made a proclamation, saying, "The man that shall find Korkud, him will the king enrich." And there went husbandmen and said unto Selim, "Is not Korkud hid in a cavern ?" And he sent to fetch him ; and they killed him on the road. And Selim took Magnesia, and all the cities of the sea, at that time, and all the cities of Asia ; and he put garrisons into the midst thereof.

517. And he returned unto Boursa, and there were two sons of his brothers who died before the face of Bajazet. And he made a great banquet for all his nobles, and for the inhabitants of the city, and for the two sons of his brothers, who were left ; and they ate and became drunken with him ; and every one went away unto his own house. But the two lads he led into a chamber, and commanded, and they brought them down in blood unto the grave. And there were none left unto the house of Bajazet, save Achmed and his sons. And Selim sojourned and went unto

Nicomedia, and passed over in ships unto Constantinople, and returned unto his house in peace.

518. And all his thoughts were all the day, to put away Achmed from before his face. And he commanded the aga of the janissaries, and two who saw his face*, and they sent him unto him with subtlety, saying, "Our lives are become weary of thy brother Selim, and of his wicked deeds: and now come, we pray thee, unto Boursa; for on the day that thou comest out thence, he shall die, and we will make thee king." But he believed not their words; and they sent unto him time after time, according to these words. And it came to pass, when they daily spake thus unto him, that they turned his heart; and he went away from the place where he was, and said, "I will go and see if their words are true, and then I will return." And when Selim heard that his brother was gone forth, he passed through Natolia, and he went on secretly†, and came quickly unto Boursa; but Achmed knew nothing of it, for he walked in his simplicity. And Selim met the host of his brother in the plain of Boursa, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifteen. And he fell upon them suddenly; and the men of

* i.e. Two courtiers or ministers who had access to his person.

† הילך שמי, Numbers xxiii. 3. i. e. He *went upon a hill*, or, according to some rabbis, *he went silently*, or *secretly*.

Achmed were smitten before him, and they fled. And the riders upon horses pursued them, and defeated them with the edge of the sword. And they slew the horse of Achmed, and he fell to the ground, and they took him; and he said, “Lead me unto my brother.” And it came to pass, as they were on the road, that the servants of Selim came, and they brought him down to the grave. And the two sons of Achmed fled from the battle; and the one went unto the sofi, the king of Persia, and he honored him, and gave unto him cities to dwell in. And the lad grew up; and he gave him a wife; for he said, “With him I will fight against Selim.” But the lad walked in the stubbornness of his heart; and they brought him down [و] to the grave in blood. And the second went unto Egypt, and abode there. And Selim then returned unto his house: and the war ceased.

519. And when Pope Julius heard what had been done at Ravenna, he was at unity with the emperor, and with the king of England, and the king of Sphard, and the lords of Venice; and they made a covenant against Tzaphrath, in order quickly to swallow up alive the people of Tzaphrath. And they brought the Swiss by the way of Verona, and set the battle in array upon the river Po: and the men of Tzaphrath were smitten before them; and they went unto Novara, and pur-

sued them, and they fled unto Tzaphath. And the tower of Milan was left unto the men of Tzaphath, and they put a garrison in it; and also Crema and Brisa* were left unto the French at that time. And the confederates gave the dukedom of Milan unto Maximilian, the son of the Moor, by command of the emperor; and the country had rest. Then was Genoa moved, and they sent for help unto the men of Tzaphath; but they listened not unto their voice. And Giovanni Fragoso† went near, and called unto it for peace. And the men of Tzaphath whom the king had there in his kingdom, ran unto the tower; and a hundred men who were with him were left without, and he sent them unto Tzaphath; for they feared for their lives. And the city was left for three days, as the sheep that have no shepherd. And Giovanni came by command of the confederates, and they gave the city into his hand. And the two cities which were left unto the king were besieged; and the war was strong against them many days. And they chose Giovanni Fragoso to be their duke on the twenty-ninth day of the month of June, and his friends were very glad. And Giovanni commanded, and they besieged the tower, and battered its walls round about. And a priest who was in the tower, spake unto the hearts of the men of Tzaphath, and he

gave it into their hand ; and they gave him twelve thousand scudi : and they went their way. And the fortress* which is upon the sea was left unto the king, and he sent unto it corn, bread, and victuals ; and the men of Tzaphrath abode in the midst thereof many days. And Crebilo* in Crema, was there in the name of King Lewis in those days. And his words were with Paolo Capello†, the governor of the Venetians ; and he gave the city into their hand, and his companion he brought down in blood to the grave.

520. And the confederates went unto Brisa, and besieged it many days. And when the men of Tzaphrath saw that there was no strength in their hand, and that there was not left unto the king in Italy a single male‡, they gave the city unto the men of Sphard, and went their way ; and the men of Sphard came into the city, and would not give it unto the Venetians, except for full money ; and their wrath was greatly kindled. And they made peace with the king ; and he sent unto them free Bartolomeo di Liviano§, and the Griti, and the men who were with them, and they returned in the month of October, in the year one thousand five hundred and twelve, every one unto his house.

* ה. קָרִיבֵלׁוּ † פָאַלְוֹ קָפִילּוּ

In this and similar instances we have been advised not to translate too accurately.

§ בָּרְטוּלּוּמִיאוּ דִי לִיבְיאָנוּ

521. In that year, came the king of England unto Tzaphath, with a strong hand. And the emperor came unto the borders of Flanders, with his daughter Margaret ; and these kings destroyed the best part thereof. And Lewis was afraid, and sorely distressed.

522. And Henry took counsel at Calais. And he removed from Calais, and encamped against the city of Ardres*, which belonged unto the king ; and they cast up trenches against it; and the inhabitants gave the city into his hand, and went their way. And the English came into the city and cast it down ; and it was a perpetual heap for many days. And they went unto Terouane†, and battered its walls ; and the inhabitants gave the city into his hand. And in those days, the emperor also came with a strong hand unto Terouane‡.

523. And King Lewis gathered together men, and went§ to the relief of Terouane, and those who were numbered of them were forty thousand. And they set a battle in array there ; and the men of Tzaphath were smitten, and they fell slain to the ground. And when the men of the fortress saw that there was no strength in their hand, they gave the fortress unto King Henry, and went their way free. They were yet in Terouane||, and James,

* אַרְדָּו. † תַּאֲרָאֵן. ‡ Here spelt טְרוֹאֵן.

§ Or rather sent. || Here spelt טְרוֹאֵן.

king of Scotland, sent unto Henry, saying, “ Return unto the place of thy nativity, lest I come against thee, and smite the city and the fulness thereof.” And the king of England sent unto James, saying, “ The thistle, which is in Lebanon, sent unto the cedar, saying, ‘ Come, let us look one another in the face ;’ and a beast of the field came by and trod down the thistle*. And now, why dost thou contend with the evil, that thou shouldest fall, and thy people with thee ; for the gleanings of England are better than the harvest of Scotland†.”

524. And Henry wrote unto his wife Isabella‡. And the queen gathered forty thousand men, and the duke of Orko§, at their head. And she went unto the city Orko||, against the King James, with a strong hand. And James made a bridge upon the river Rebasus¶, which is between Scotland and England, and he passed over with the soldiers ; and they who were numbered of them were one hundred thousand. And the king Henry sent unto Orko**, ten thousand Germans, and the

* 2 Kings xiv. 8, 9. † Judges viii. 2.

‡ The name of his wife was Katharine.

§ אֹרְקֹו, York ? but it was the earl of Surrey, son of the duke of Norfolk, who commanded this army.

|| אֹרְקָה. This perhaps was York, called above אַבְרָךְ, Eboracum. ¶ רִיבָאָסּוֹם, the Tweed ? ** אֹרְקָה.

son of the duke of Nassau at their head ; and the man was a mighty man of valor, but a son of whoredom*. And he would fight ; and he took thirty thousand chosen men, and went out. And he set his weapons of war against the city, and strengthened himself, and abode there. And it came to pass one day, that they gave the signal for the battle. And he spake unto his men, saying, “We will to-day draw near for battle, and it shall come to pass, when the men of James shall come out against us, that we will flee before them. And they shall come out after us, until we shall have drawn them off from the place in which they have fortified themselves, and from the battering rams† ; for they will say, ‘They flee before us :’ and we will flee before them. After that you shall arise ; because God has given them into our hand, for He will not fail to assist.” And James and all his people went to the battle, and the English were smitten before them and fled. And they pursued after them, and the Scotch were drawn off from the place in which they had fortified themselves ; and there was not one man left in the camp of James who did not pursue them, as far as the battering rams. And the

* These words mean probably that the Duke of Nassau was a wicked man.

† Rabbi Joseph explains battering rams by רַאֵל בָּמְבָרֶדֶשׁ “that is to say, mortars.”

English stopped, and threw stones on them* ; and they slew amongst them, until there was not one that remained or escaped. And those that died in that slaughter were fifty thousand, and the rest fled for their lives. And with James there was an Englishman, who had revolted against King Henry, and he made him captain over his host. And it came to pass, when James, the king, fled, that he also pursued after him, and pierced him twice with the spear that he had in his hand ; and he fell to the ground and died. And he took from him his upper garment, the king's mantle, and went out from the battle, to bring it unto the king of England. And the captain of the English host sent, and they broke the bridge. And it came to pass as they fled, that they fell into the water, into the midst of the river, and they died in the mighty waters. And James was sought for ; and he was found, and they brought him into the city. And he died on the third day, and they buried him in the town wall†, because he had slain his father. And when King Henry heard thereof, he remained not many days in Terouane ; and he built there a fort, and returned unto his country. Then Lewis made peace with him, and

* i. e. Fired upon them balls, which were in those days frequently made of stones.

‡ בקר החומה.

took his sister to wife. And he gave him back the cities which [ה] he had taken, and the country had rest seven years.

525. And Julius, the pope, died ; and they chose Leo, from the family of Medicis, a man of Florence, on the eleventh day of the month of March ; and he sat in his place in the year one thousand five hundred and thirteen.

526. In that year began Daniel Bomberg, from Antwerp, to print, and to bring out from darkness into light many books in the holy tongue*. And the most learned men there continually went forth from and returned to his house† ; and he drew not back his right hand, to give unto all what they asked, according to the good hand of the Lord, that was upon him. And the above-mentioned Daniel, was a Nazarene by birth, both by his father's and mother's side ; and in all his fore-fathers there was not a drop of the Jewish seed.

527. And the lords of Venice sent Bartolommeo di Liviano‡ and the Griti against Brisa with a strong hand ; and they besieged it in that year.

528. And also King Lewis sent his hosts unto Italy ; for the Venetians lent their hand to besiege Novara ; and Maximilian Sforza, the duke, was in the land ; and in the midst thereof were about six

* i. e. In Hebrew.

† Gen. viii. 37.

בָּרְטוֹלֶמַיָּו דִּ לִיבְיאָנוּ ‡

thousand men, Germans ; and the city was besieged. And they promised to give the city into their hand, only, that the besiegers should let them go free ; but the men of Tzaphrath would not listen. And it came to pass one day, that the men of the city fell suddenly upon the men of Tzaphrath ; and the men of Tzaphrath were smitten, and fell slain to the ground, and the rest fled unto the mountains, and it was a shame to the men of Tzaphrath.

529. In those days, the ships of Genoa besieged the fortress, which was left there, in the hand of the king. And there came a large ship on the tenth day of the month of March, carrying corn, and bread, and clothes, in abundance, unto the men who were in the midst thereof for assistance, and she passed through the midst with a high hand, and stood opposite the fort at the distance of a bowshot ; and all the city was moved about them. And there was a valiant man whose name was Manuel Cablo*, and he said unto the nobles of the city, “ Fear not, for I will take her.” And they listened unto his voice, and chose valiant men of the inhabitants of the city, who went with him. And Manuel went with him into one of the ships, and commanded the sailors, and they placed the ship between the fort and the ship which came to assist them ; and they set the battle in

* מנואל קאבלו

array there. And Manuel went unto the ship which the king had sent, and cut her cables with an axe, and brought her out with a strong hand. And the men of the fortress shot stones upon them at that time, and some of them fell slain to the ground. And of the men of Tzaphrath who were in the ship, some were killed, and some fled into the fortress, and thirty-two were taken alive. And also the captain was taken in the midst of the sea, and they brought him into the city. And they put him in prison, and six of his men they hanged upon the tree ; and the country was at rest. Then the archers wounded Andrea Doria ; and the physicians healed him, and he recovered.

530. In those days, when the king's host stood against Novara, on the twenty-third day of the month of May, which is the third month, came Count Gerolamo of Fiesco and his brother to Genoa, into the in side of the court, to speak unto the Duke Giovanni Fragoso* ; and Giacomo Lomelin† spake unto them ; and there was strife between them. And it grieved the duke, and he spake kindly unto them, and their wrath was appeased. And Giovanni was sore afraid, lest the Fiesco‡ should give their hand unto the king at that time.

531. And Count Gerolamo went down into the

* פראגוסו. אגומו לומליין † גיאקומו פראנטסו. ‡ דיפיאיסקו.

open space of the court; and there arose upon him Fragosino*, and Ludovico, the brother of the duke, and they slew him ; and he fell slain to the ground. And his brethren fled unto their house ; and they called “ Adorno, Adorno !”† with a loud voice, and then went unto their cities at that time.

532. And it came to pass on the next morning, that Antoniato Adorno‡, and his brother Jerome, and three thousand men with him, came ; and they set the battle in array against the men who were besieging the fortress, and drove them away ; and put therein corn, and bread, and victuals, in abundance ; and Janus § the duke, and his brother Fragosino, fled unto the ships before them ; for evil was determined against them.

533. Then came Antoniato Adorno, and his brother, into the city ; and also the Fiesci, the brethren of the deceased, returned with a high hand at that time. And Antoniato became their shepherd, by command of the king, for some time. And Zacharias, the brother of Duke Janus, was taken alive ; and they betrayed him into the hand of the count’s brethren ; and they slew him, and trampled upon him in the streets of Genoa, at that time. Then came the king’s ships and gave provision unto the men of the fortress, so much as

* פראגסינו.

† אדורנו.

‡ אנטוניאטו אדורנו.

§ יאנוס.

they asked. And they went after the ships that belonged unto Janus ; and the men of John took of them two ships, and they returned back with shame.

534. And it came to pass, when the host of the French was smitten at Novara, that Ottaviano Fragoso came, and three thousand Spaniards, and four hundred horsemen with him. And Antoniato and the Fiesci were afraid of them, and went out from the midst of the city, in the darkness of the night on the sixteenth day of the month of June, and they went unto their cities at that time. And it came to pass on the next morning, that Ottaviano, and Pietro Fragoso, came into the city. And the elders of the city received them with gladness ; and it came to pass on the next morning, that they chose Ottaviano ; and he was unto them a prince. And Ottaviano commanded, and they put a garrison upon the fort ; and they besieged it many days, and they gave it into their hand, and they cast it to the ground.

535. And the French went out in ships to make conquests in the borders of Genoa. And when the report was heard, the elders of the city prepared four galleys ; and Andrea Doria was the captain of their host at that time. Then came twelve galleys of the Ishmaelites into the sea of Genoa, and they made much prey. And it was told unto

Ottaviano, saying, “Behold, Janus, who was formerly duke, deviseth mischief against thee :” and he was at Savona at that time. And he sent there about three hundred men, and Janus fled before him ; and he went unto another country, as at this day.

536. In those days, Antoniato Adorno and the Fiesci came to assist the duke of Milan ; and they took Chiavara*, which is upon the sea-shore. And Ottaviano sent therewith soldiers, and they besieged it many days, but could not prevail against it ; and there fell many of them, and the rest returned unto Genoa, on the thirteenth day of the month of November, with shame. Then came Adorno and the Fiesci, and about two thousand men with them, and they encamped against Genoa on the river Bisanio† ; and they besieged it, and they cast up trenches against it. And Ottaviano fortified himself, and he put a garrison in the midst thereof. And it came to pass, at the end of ten days, that they arose from the city in the night, and left the battering rams that they had brought, and went their way,

537. And the French went against Brisa to assist the men of Venice, and they besieged it [אָנָה] many days, and the Spaniards delivered it unto

the French on the fifth of May, in the year one thousand five hundred and fourteen; and they went their way. Then was the city given unto the Venetians; and it has belonged unto them until this day. And they went also unto Verona, and besieged it; and the emperor and the Spaniards delivered it out of their hands at that time. On the twenty-eighth day of the month of December, Gerolamo Adorno and Scipio Fiesco came unto Genoa, in the morning watch. And the duke went out against them, and they were smitten; and he seized them alive, and put them in prison even into the prison-house. And it came to pass in the month Abib, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifteen, that the Spaniards came into the borders of Venice, and arrived in Mistri*; and they destroyed its best part; and every good house they set on fire, and every one that was found fell by the sword: God confounded them on every side. And in those times there was no peace for him that went forth and came in. And the captains of Venice became quiet; and they gathered themselves unto the fenced cities, and abode there.

538. And Bartolomeo of Liviano gathered together soldiers, and also some of the sojourners

* מיסטרי.

in the land ; and he went out against them with a strong hand. And the Spaniards went against this band unto the borders of Venice, and encamped in Mota* ; and a space about four thousand cubits was between them. And the Spaniards fled with subtlety unto the mountains, and cast away clothes and vessels in their haste ; and their cattle which they had taken in the countries of the nations, they houghed†. And Bartolomeo said, “ Surely they fly ; God has given them into our hand.” And he commanded, and they caused it to be proclaimed, saying, “ Ye shall not leave any soul alive ; and the man that shall disobey, his life shall be for that soul.” And when Prospero Colonna, and the captains of the host, saw that evil was determined against them, they caused a voice to be proclaimed, saying, “ He that cometh unto us for peace, there shall not fall one hair of his head to the ground.” And it came to pass one day, that Bartolomeo spake kindly unto the soldiers ; and he appointed captains at the head of the people. And he sent before him Battista Doto‡, the captain of the host, and Sagramoro§, the captain of the horsemen ; and he and the battering

* מוטה.

† i. e. They hamstrung, or lamed the cattle, by cutting the sinews of their legs. Compare Joshua xi. 9.

‡ באטיסטה דוטו.

§ סאנראמוֹרוּ.

rams delayed marching; and these two captains fell upon their enemies before they came, and put the battle in array, and the van-guard fell slain to the ground. And when the French saw that they were drawn off from the camp and from the battering rams, they arrayed a battle against them the second time, and defeated them by the edge of the sword, and the rest fled unto Padua; for they feared lest the earth should swallow them up. And they that died in the slaughter were about four thousand men; and also Battista and Sagramoro and the governor of the Venetians, died in that slaughter.

539. And the king of Tzaphrath made peace with Ferdinand Sari*, and he gave gifts unto the Swiss, and sent them out of his country. And it came to pass, when the Lord had given him rest from all his enemies round about, he thought to return unto Italy. And the Venetians also that were before among his adversaries, early besought his face day by day; but he did not consent unto them. And Maximilian, the son of the Moor, the duke of Milan, and the Swiss, were then in the land. And it came to pass, when Lewis prepared his host and his horse to pass over, that he fell sick and died in the year one thousand five

* שָׁרִיךְ.

hundred and fifteen. And he had no sons, but a daughter, whose name was Claudia*, and she became the wife of Francis, the dauphin; and he reigned after him, for the right of the government was his.

540. And Francis Dangolist† reigned, and they put the royal crown upon his head at Paris; and the nobles and the ambassadors of Venice honored him much.

541. And when Ottaviano Fragoso‡ saw that he had no power in his hand to withstand, and that the thoughts of the Adorni and the Fiesci were against him all the day, he gave his hand unto King Francis, and they both made a covenant. Then came the ships of the king unto Genoa, and they received them with gladness. And Fragoso gave the fortress into the hand of the king; and he was a servant unto him. Gerolamo Adorno and Scipio Fiesco they sent free unto their country. And he sent one thousand men towards Lombardy, and they arrived at Alessandria, and he was unto the French instead of eyes§.

542. And King Francis passed over with a

* קלודיה, the Latin form of Louisa.

† פרנסואה דאנגולט, François d'Angoulême, just before called Dauphin, because he was a son-in-law of the king and the nearest heir.

‡ Here spelt פראנסו אוקטאביאנו.

§ i. e. A leader, or guide; see ante p. 189, note.

strong hand, and he went unto Marignano* ; and Bartolomeo, the captain of the Venetian host, went after the host of the Spaniards ; and they pursued them unto the river Po. And they fled before him unto Piacenza. And Bartolomeo came in haste unto Lodi. And Lord Inizio Dazir† fought against the fortress at that time, and the men of the fortress were afraid of them, and they said, “ Make a covenant with us, and we will go.” And they did so, and they went their way. And Bartolomeo of Liviano went to bow down before the king, and they met together, and he returned against the Spaniards, lest they also should come unto Milan. And the king removed from Marignano‡, and came nigh unto the city, and they encamped there. And he commanded, and they spake kindly unto the Swiss that were in Milan, and these made a covenant between themselves. And the cardinal brought the Swiss unto Milan ; and it grieved him much : and he spake kindly unto the captains of the host, and he turned their hearts backwards. And they proclaimed with subtlety, saying, “ The Venetians are smitten before the Spaniards ; and they are come with a high hand against the king : and now let us go out against

* טאריניאנו. † מאינציאו דצ'רי. ‡ מאריניאנו.

them, and we shall see what will become of their dreams*."

543. And it came to pass, on the fourteenth day of the month of September, at eventide, in the year one thousand five hundred and fifteen, that all the hosts of the Swiss went out from Milan ; and their numbered ones were forty thousand. And the cardinal divided the people into four parts; and he fell upon the host of the French, every man against the one before him, and they came into the midst of the camp as in a moment; and no man could stand before them : and the king feared much. And he sent against them Pietro of Novara, who drove them away, and took from them the rams which they had taken. And they put the battle in array once more against him ; and the host of the king was smitten, and they fled before them ; for their soul was weary of slaughter.

544. And Bartolomeo sent to know what had happened ; and he returned by command of the king, saying, "They fight ; and there is also a slaughter among the people." And he commanded, and his hosts went hastily unto the camp, and Bartolomeo passed over before them, and with him fifty men. The sun rose upon the earth, and Bartolomeo arrived ; and he saw, and behold,

about eight hundred men were fighting against the French, and their feet had well nigh slipped at that time. And he hastened, and called with a loud voice, “ Tzaphrath ! Tzaphrath ! Marco ! Marco ! ” And he arrayed a battle against them, and the Swiss fled ; for they were terrified before him. And when the king saw that they were come to assist him, he strengthened himself, and he spake unto the heart of his mighty men ; and they that stumbled girded themselves with strength ; for the day began to dawn, and they put the battle in array ; for their heart was like unto the heart of a lion. And the host of the Venetians arrived, and they also put the battle in array ; and the Swiss were smitten at that time, and they fell slain to the ground. And many ran unto the forest, and they slew them with the battering rams ; their eye had no compassion upon them, and they brought them down in blood unto the grave ; and there fell of them twenty thousand in that slaughter ; and of the French there fell [סב] six thousand footmen, and three hundred horsemen. And they covered the face of the earth five miles* long and two miles wide ; and the battle was strong between them from the fifth day, on the twenty-second hour, until the eighteenth

* מילין.

hour of the next morning: there had not been the like in the gates of Milan from the day it became a nation. And the rest of the Swiss fled; and they returned unto their country with shame, because they fled from the battle.

545. And the elders of Milan went out, and bowed themselves before the king with their faces to the ground, and said, "We have sinned;" and they gave the city into his hand. And Bartolomeo, the captain of the host, and the governor of the Venetians, came to bow themselves before the king; and King Francis honored them, and he sware unto them to be a brother unto them all the days; for they had saved his soul from death. And it came to pass on the next morning, that they came unto Milan with gladness. And he took all the cities of the dukedom at that time; and the Duke Maximilian he sent unto Tzaphrath, and gave him a sufficient support until the day of his death. Then the kings of the uncircumcised were terrified; and all the nobles of Italy were moved before him at that time.

546. And the Pope Leo consented to be seen by the king, and came unto Bologna. And also King Francis went thither to bow himself before him; and they rejoiced in friendship several days,

and spake together; and they returned each one unto his house.

547. And Francis sent his hosts with the Venetians, and they besieged Verona and Brisa many days. And it came to pass, as they were many days there, that the men of Venice made peace with the emperor by command of the king, in the year one thousand five hundred and sixteen. And they gave Verona into the hand of the king; and the king gave it back unto the Venetians; and the rest of the cities of Friuli were left unto the emperor at that time: and the country was at rest until the day of his death. And the king returned unto Tzaphrath, and his fame was throughout all the earth. And his like was not before him, a king of a fair countenance, and taller than all the people; and when he saw a wise man, or a mighty man of valor, he took him home.

548. In those days came Cortogilo the Turk* from the east country, and with him twenty galleys. And he took eighteen cruizing ships bearing corn, as they came from Sicily. And in those days there was no peace for him who went out or came in; for he hunted their steps, so that they could not go. And it grieved the men of Genoa much. And they also gathered together soldiers, and brought

* קורטונילו.

them to sea in ships, and their number was nineteen cruizers, with the king's ships, and three great ships ; and Frederic Fragoso, the priest, the brother of Ottaviano, was the captain of the host in those days. And they went unto Bonifazio and reached Biserta*, which is in Barbary, and found there ships of Cortogilo† in the midst of the river mooring securely, and took them ; and all the slaves‡ went out free without ransom at the same time. And they took the suburbs of the city round about, and gave them to be plundered ; and there was none to deliver from their hands. And Frederic wished to burn the ships with fire ; but they would not hearken unto them ; for they were inclined after gain, and went after those riches that cannot profit. And Andrea Doria, the captain of two galleys§ was there with him, and he was not counted for any thing in those days. And the Ishmaelites went out against them ; and there fell many of them slain to the ground, and they drove them away. And the Lord drove the sea with a strong east wind ; and the ships of the uncircumcised went without, and two were left in the river in the pits of the Ishmaelites until this day. And the uncircumcised went unto Tunis,

* ביסרטה.

קָרְטָגִילוֹ †

‡ i. e. Galley-slaves.

דוֹנוּיּוֹת §

and took in Galita* a cruizer† which the Turk had taken in Corsica; and they went unto Girbi‡, and burned the cruizers of the Ishmaelites that were there; and they returned. And Cortogilo§ went hastily with ships unto the east.

549. And it came to pass in the year one thousand five hundred and sixteen, that Selim, the great Turk, said, “Now shall the merchants of Ajem|| teach my people the statutes of the Sofi and his laws; and the heart of this people will turn unto him.” And he commanded, that the merchants of the Sofi’s countries should not come over into his country; and all that belongeth unto the merchants of Ajem, that were found in Boursa¶ he took; and he put the merchants in prison, and sent them unto Constantinople at that time. And he sought an occasion to fight against the Sofi concerning the cities of Armenia; for the Turks had dwelled there formerly, and the Sofi took them from their hand; and they were his until this day. •

* גָּלִיטָה, Galita, an island on the coast of Tunis, anciently called *Aegimurus*, or Galata.

† סְפִינָה אַחֲת מִשׁוֹטֶת.

‡ חַנִּידְבֵּי § Here spelled קָוָרְטוֹנְגָּלִי.

|| דְּאָנִימִי. Merchants of Ajem, or Persia, seem to be intended. The inhabitants of Persia are Mohammedans of the Shiite sect, whilst the Turks are Sunnites. ¶ בּוּרְסִיאָה.

550. And Selim gathered together soldiers, and gat more janissaries ; and he brought workmen from Ashkenaz, and from Hungary, and from Tzarpinth ; and they cast battering rams, and mounted them on carriages, and made also small guns in abundance, which the riders upon horses could carry ; and he gave their hire according to what they asked. And when Selim saw any son of valor, he took him to himself, as his manner was all his days, and gave unto them horses and muskets*. And their number was one thousand, besides those that walked on foot. And he said, “ With this will I push the Sofi ;” for his men were not experienced in warfare. And even from the countries of the uncircumcised they went with Selim, and he gave them their full hire in silver, and his fame went throughout all the earth. And in the cities on the sea he builded houses for the ships, and he gathered tribute of the merchandise, for the increase of silver†. And it came to pass after he had done all this, he brought over the soldiers unto Asia, and they were added to the soldiers who were there. And they that were numbered of them were one hundred and fifty thousand horses, and footmen in abundance, besides the janissaries. And he turned his face toward Persia, and passed over by the

* סכופיטו.

† i. e. To increase his revenue.

way of Cappadocia and Lycaonia*, and he took Little Armenia†, and they were unto him servants unto tribute. And he sent messengers unto the king Adolah‡, who abode in the mountains, saying, “ Make with us a covenant, that we may fight against the Sofi.”

551. And Adolah answered and said, “ I will not fight against the Sofi ; for he is our brother, our flesh ; and also unto him, as well as unto you, I will give corn, and bread, and victuals, and every one of you may pass in peace through my country.” And his words seemed good in the ears of Selim, and he turned not his heart against him ; for his land contained fenced cities, with gates and bars, and he had thirty thousand horsemen, who made war with mighty power. And they both sware that one would not hurt the other.

552. And Selim went his way, and he made a bridge over the river Euphrates, and they passed over unto the territories of the Sofi ; and they gave them to be plundered. And the Sofi went out from Tabriz§ against him with a strong hand, a four days’ journey, and he put the battle in array against him on the twenty-fourth day of the month

* ליאוניה.

† Armenia was divided into the Greater and the Lesser Armenia. Armenia Minor was the part west of the Euphrates.

‡ אדרילה. Ala-eddaulah, the sovereign of Meraash, in Cilicia, seems to be meant.

¶ תאברים.

of August, the like of which never was ; and their voice was heard from afar off. And when Selim saw that the Sofi prevailed, he commanded, and his men divided themselves ; and the Persians passed with a strong hand in the middle, unto the place of the battering rams. And the men of Selim put fire into the battering rams, and the earth trembled at their voice, and they fell slain in multitudes, smitten and exhausted to the ground, and the remainder of the horse fled at their voice ; for they were [ج] not experienced, and the riders could not bring them back unto the battle, and there were not two left together. And they pursued after them ; and defeated them with the edge of the sword, and many were taken alive, and the remainder fled for their lives. And the Sofi returned with the rest that escaped backward, embittered and sorrowful. And they said, “ This is the finger of God.” And Selim passed the night in the camp of the Persians. And they took all that they found ; they left no gleanings in that night. And Selim arose in the morning, and went on his journey unto Tabriz, the capital, and encamped against it. And the elders of the city went out to meet him, and said, “ Make a covenant with us, and we will serve thee.” And he made a covenant with them, and Selim came peaceably unto the city.

553. In those days Ottaviano Fragoso Sari* drove the Jews from Genoa. And the father of Rabbi Joshua the priest (may the remembrance of the righteous be a blessing!) went out from thence, and returned unto his house at Novi ; and he returned thither no more : and the rest of Jews went unto Naples, and abode there.

554. And the King Adolah violated his covenant ; and he went out, when Selim was at Tabriz, with a strong hand into the field, and plundered every one that passed to and fro ; and the men of Selim could bring neither corn nor bread nor victuals into the camp ; and they had completely eaten the corn that was at Tabriz, and that which they had brought with them ; and they ate the best of the horses, and the abominable creatures, and mice ; and roots of herbs ; and the famine was very heavy upon them. And when Selim saw that evil was determined against them, and that he had not the means in his hand to retain strength, he went out from Tabriz. And he led forth with him the principal men of the city, and their wives and their children, and all their property, and all the workers of weapons of war, and he passed over the river Euphrates, and encamped against Maskoalt†,

that is upon the river, and he took it, and gave it to be plundered, and he returned on his way. And many of the horses that were left died of hunger. And he besieged Lycaonia, which is Cogni, and they encamped round about.

555. And Selim came embittered and sorrowful into the city, and the soldiers were left without; and their visage was darker than blackness by hunger and want of every thing at that time. And he sent the weak and the exhausted of the soldiers unto the land of Greece ; and others came in their stead unto the camp until they were recovered†.

556. And the heart of the Sofi, and the heart of his people became faint, even after the Turks went out from Tabriz ; for the terror of the rams fell upon them : and he came with his men who were left unto the border, and fortified himself there.

557. And it came to pass, when the year came round, that Selim longed to take vengeance on the King Adolah, and he sent against him Sinan || Pasha, with a strong hand ; and he came into the land of Adolah, and set the battle in array against them ; and they were smitten before him, and fell slain to the ground, and he took their

* לֵיקָאוֹנִיָּה דְּזַא קְוָנָנִי. Cogni, or Koniah, the ancient Iconium, is the principal city of Lycaonia.

† עַד חֲיוֹתָם.

סִנָּן †

whole country ; and the king also was taken alive, and he sent him in chains unto Selim. And he commanded, and they smote his head off from him and set it upon a pole, and sent it round about into all his borders.

558. And Selim again gathered together soldiers, and he wished to dwell in Iconium until the month Abib. And the janissaries thought to return unto the land of Yavan ; but he would not hearken unto them. And they spake roughly unto him, and said, “ If thou wilt not go, then we will go, and make thy son Solyman king over us.” And Selim was sorely afraid ; and he arose in the night, and disguised himself, and rode upon a swift horse all the night ; and went unto Scutari and passed over the sea, and no man knew him, and he turned into his house*. And he abode there three days, and listened not unto the voice of any man, and to no man said he any thing of all this. And Piri† Pasha, and the cadi, said unto him, “ Why, our lord, O king, is thy countenance sad this day ?” And he said unto them, “ I am no more king ; for the janissaries have spoken unto me according to these words.” And they spake unto his heart, saying, “ Our lord, O king, fear not, nor be dismayed, for they are fools ; there-

* Com. Gen. xix. 2, 3.

פִּרְיִי †

fore they speak folly, and their violence shall return upon their own heads*. And thou, O lord, live for ever!" And his spirit revived as they spake unto him. And he told them who were the rebels, and they wrote unto the chief of the janissaries; and they took the men that had sinned against their own souls†, and he sent them unto Constantinople. And it came to pass, as they were in the gate of the king, they said, "Forgive us, our lord, O king, according to thy great kindness; for the captains of our hosts have turned our hearts backward." And they gave them into his hand, and said, "Bring them down in blood into the grave, and they shall be for a token against the children of rebellion :" and they did so, and the king's wrath was appeased‡.

559. And his son Solyman was sorely afraid, lest his father's wrath should also be kindled against him, because of that which they had spoken; and he went and bowed himself before his father, and kissed the soles of his feet; and his father vexed him not, but blessed him; and he returned unto his house in peace.

560. And Selim put forces into all the cities

* Ps. vii. 16.

† i. e. Who had forfeited their lives. See Hab. xi. 10.
Esther ii. 1., and vii. 10.

of the border, and returned unto Iconium, and abode there.

561. And the Sofi sent unto Kamphison*, to the sultan of Egypt, for assistance. And he hearkened unto his voice, saying, “Thy people are as my people; and thy horses are as my horses†; only be strong and courageous. And it shall come to pass, in the month of Abib, that we will fight against him.” And they made a covenant between themselves.

562. And it came to pass, in the year one thousand five hundred and eighteen, that Selim took the sum of the soldiers, and gave their hire; and he removed from Iconium in the month Abib, and went unto the mountain of Tabro‡. And it came to pass, when they were in the road, that it was told unto Selim, saying, “The sultan is removed from Mizraim§; and behold, he has thus placed himself, to join the host of the Sofi.” And he turned and stood still, and they assembled there. And they said, “It is better for us to fight against the sultan first, before he cometh unto the Sofi, and we shall see what will become of his dreams||.” And they returned back, and went to the east of Cilicia. And when the sultan, the king of Egypt, heard it, his heart was moved, and he gathered

* קַמְפִיסּוֹן.

תָּאֶבְרוֹ.

† Egypt.

§ Gen. xxxvii. 20.

together of the Arabs much people ; besides the mamluks, of whom he had fifteen thousand with him ; and they came unto the great city Aleppo*, and encamped there.

563.. And Selim came in haste against him. And they told him, saying, “ Behold, the host of the sultan is by the river Singah†.” And he went thither with a strong hand, and fell upon them, and set the battle in array there, on the twenty-fourth day of August. And the mamluks fought, and came unto the place of the janissaries with a high hand ; and they drew back unto the place where Selim was. And Selim commanded, and they put fire into the battering rams, and the earth shook at the sound thereof, and the sun and the moon were darkened ; for their smoke went up toward heaven. And they made a great slaughter among the mamluks, and the rest of the horses fled at their voice, and they could not bring them back ; for they were not exercised to all this. And the feeble men of Selim girded themselves with strength, and pursued after them, and defeated the enemies with the edge of the sword. And they who were left, listened not unto the sultan for anguish of spirit ; for the terror of the guns fell upon them. And he also fled after he had fought ; and he became faint and fell to the ground : and

Kamphison, the sultan, died at that time; and Kamphison was seventy-six years old; and sixteen years he had reigned in Egypt, and had not heard the voice of a host until that day. And the rest fled unto Aleppo. [ס"ד]

264. And Selim passed that night in the camp, and he set guards round about; and they arose in the morning and went unto the camp of the enemy, and took much prey. In that night, in the fourth watch, Gasili*, the captain of the sultan's host, and they who were left, set out from Aleppo, and went unto Damascus. And Selim drew nigh unto the city; and Kasir Bey†, the governor of the city, went out unto him, and he gave the city into his hand. And Selim honored him. Then they said, “Kasir Bey is the chastisement of his master‡.”

565. In that year, in the beginning of the month Elul§, two hundred and seventy-eight according to the smaller computation||, I took to wife Palomah¶, the daughter of Rabbi Abraham the priest (the memory of the just be blessed!), and we returned unto Novi, which is in the territory

* גָּזְלִי.

+ קָאַסִּירְבִּיּוֹ.

‡ קָאַסִּירְבִּיּוֹ מַסֵּר אֲדוֹנֵנוֹ.

§ Which nearly coincides with the month of August, A.D. 1518.

|| לְפֶרֶת קָטָן לְפֶקַד, i.e. an abbreviation for the small number, which means that the thousands of the Jewish era are not expressed.

¶ פָּאַלּוֹמָה.

of Genoa ; for there, at that time, was the house of my father of blessed memory.

566. And Selim came into the city of Aleppo, and he gave immunity* unto the city and the merchants ; and they received him with gladness. And it was told unto Selim, saying, “ The mam-luks have assembled themselves in Damascus, and are gone unto Egypt to make to themselves a king.” And Selim removed from Aleppo, and went unto Damascus ; and he drew nigh unto the city. And the elders of the city said, “ Make a covenant with us, and we will serve thee.” And he made a covenant with them, and came into the city ; and the soldiers were left without, that they should not destroy the country. And when the men of Tripolis, and Sidon, and Beyrouth, and Ptolemais, heard the report concerning Selim, they also went out unto him for peace. And he assembled some of the elders of all these cities at Damascus, and they renewed there the kingdom†. There he made unto them statutes and ordinances‡ ; and there they were obedient unto him, servants unto him as at this day. And they abode there several days, until their spirit was refreshed, and he turned his face towards Egypt. And he sent

* חנינה.

† i. e. The government. Compare 1 Samuel, xi. 14.

Exod. xv. 25.

before him Sinan* Pasha unto the land of Philistia unto Gaza. And it came to pass, as they were on the road, that Selim altered his course, and went unto the land of Judah, and came unto Jerusalem. And he went unto the sanctuary of the Lord that was pulled down, and bowed himself there before the Lord, and returned on his way.

567. And Sinan passed through the land ; and with him were fifteen thousand horse ; and the Arabs went out against him ; and he passed over unto Gaza with a high hand ; and the men of Gaza gave the city into his hand, and he abode there until his master came.

568. Then did the mamluks choose the great Tomombeiro Diadaro† for sultan ; and he was in his generation a valiant man, of great exploits. And the Sultan Tomombeiro gathered together soldiers, and wrote down in a book the names of all the slaves that were found in his kingdom. And he gave unto them horses and weapons of war ; and also of the Arabs, he gathered together a very great host. And he prepared also battering rams and gunpowder, and his host became very great. And when he heard that Sinan was come unto Gaza, he sent thither Gasili with a strong hand ; for he leaned as upon a staff upon the

reed of the inhabitants of the city that had sent to fetch him. And Sinan feared, and went out half a day's journey to meet them ; and he encamped there by the waterside. While they still wanted rest, the watchmen said, “ Behold, there are horses coming.” And as they were yet speaking, Gasili arrived, and fell upon them suddenly, and set the battle in array there. And when Gasili saw that the inhabitants of Gaza did not come to assist him, he turned back ; and they left the clothes and the vessels in their haste ; and there fell of them much people. And Sinan returned unto Gaza, and slew some of their fattest*, because they lent their hand unto Gasili to bring him forth ; and he abode there several days.

569. Then came Selim also unto Gaza, and Sinan bowed himself before him, and told him all these things. And Selim removed thence unto the desert. And Sinan went before him a day's journey with the men of Yavan, and they passed through the desert, and came unto Egypt. And they encamped at some distance from Makaria, where the garden of the king's palace is : and therein are trees of the goodly balsam oil† ; and the dwellers in the garden make every year holes in the trees with an ivory knife ; and when the oil flows down, they put it in a bottle to be preserved.

* Ps. lxxviii. 31.

† אפרסמן.

570. And the sultan fortified Makaria, and placed there the rams and the flaming sword, to keep the way of the tree of the garden*. And when he heard that Selim was come, he went out from Egypt, and with him twelve thousand mam-luks, besides the Arabs; and he remained there also on his ward.

571. And it was told unto Selim, and he did not go unto the place of the rams†; but he turned into the way, and fell upon them on the place where they had fortified themselves. And they went out against him, and set the battle in array from morning until evening; and many fell slain to the ground. And it came to pass, when the sun went down, that the sultan commanded, and they blew with the trumpets, and returned unto their tents, and the battle ceased. And the sultan went out from that place, and came into the city that night. And Diadaro‡, the captain of the sultan's host, and Sinan Pasha, the captain of the Turkish host, died in that battle. And Selim came into the midst of the garden, after Tomombeiro had gone out, and abode there.

572. And it came to pass, when the sultan came to Egypt, that his hosts encamped between a

* Gen. iii. 24.

† i. e. The batteries.

‡ This Diadaro is evidently a distinct person from Tomombeiro Diadaro, whose death occurs at a subsequent period; see p. 429.

certain city and the river, and they fortified themselves there. And he sent and summoned all the mamluks from each of the cities that were there ; and he brought out all the weapons of war, and gave them unto the mamluks, and unto the twelve thousand servants that were found in the city ; and his camp became very strong. And he sent also unto the land of Judah, and unto the land of Arabia, to hire many soldiers ; and he thought to go to fight in the darkness of the night. And it was told unto Selim ; and he commanded, and they kindled fire round about his camp, so that the night shone like the day ; and he remained on his ward.

573. And Tomombeiro* went out in the darkness of the night ; and when he perceived the great fire, he said, "Surely my secret has been told unto him :" and he fought against them. And when he saw that he could not prevail, he drew back. And the mamluks desired to remain without ; but they came with him into the city, and fortified it, and put a garrison in the midst thereof.

574. And Selim also drew near, and entered the city ; for the city had no wall. And they fought in the midst thereof three days and three nights ; and they ran about in the streets thereof, and all the city was moved about them. And

* טומומבירו.

there was a great cry in Egypt*, and much people died in that battle. And when the mamluks saw that they had no strength in their hands, they departed from the city, and they went unto the banks of the river. And they passed over with the sultan from the other side of the river, and went unto the land of Sigistan† by the way of Africa, and abode there. And he sent again, and called the mamluks that were in Alexandria; and brought also soldiers from Africa, and from the land of Arabia, and from the other countries that were nigh unto him; and his camp increased much, but to no profit.

575. And when Gasili‡, the captain, returned with the kings of the Arabians, and saw that the sultan had fled, he lifted up his voice and wept. And he said unto the captains of the host, “ What more is there to be done ? ” And they said, [סִיחָן] “ Do according to thy wisdom, that thou mayest live and not die.” And Gasili went unto Selim, and bowed himself to the ground before his face. And he said unto him, “ I have walked with the sultan in the integrity of my heart from my youth until this day; and behold, even now I come to assist him; but he is no more, for God hath

* Exod. xii. 30. i. e. There was as great a lamentation as in Egypt, when all the first-born were slain.

סִינִיסְטָרָן † גַּזְּלִי.

smitten him. And when I saw that God was with thee, I came to my lord to say, ‘ Make a covenant with thy servant, and he will serve thee.’ ”

576. And Selim received him, and spake unto his heart, and said unto him, “ Fear not; only be a son of valor.” And he made him captain of his host, and gave unto him his hire in full money. And the captains of the Arabians came also to bow themselves before him; and he gave them their hire.

577. And there was told unto Selim all that Tomombeiro had done, and that many of the principal men of the city gave their hands to bring him back unto Egypt. And he called the chief men of the city, and put them in prison; and he departed in haste, and passed over the river.

578. And when the sultan heard it, he feared the inhabitants of the country. And he said “ Let us fall into the hand of the Lord, and we will fight once more; for there is no lack of deliverance in the Lord.” And he removed from Sigistan in the third watch, and went in haste, and four thousand mamluks and four thousand Arabs with him. And they came suddenly unto the bridge, and found there Mustapha Pasha with his men; and they set the battle in array; and the Turks were smitten and fled; and Mustapha could not recall them, for the terror of the sultan fell upon them. And

Selim hastened to the Nile, and brought over all the soldiers, and they set the battle in array against him, and Tomombeiro drew back and fled three days' journey unto Sinosa*, and abode there : and Selim sent after him Mustapha, and Kari Bey†, and Gasili‡. And they issued a proclamation saying, “ The man that findeth the sultan, Selim will enrich him with great riches, and whosoever shall wickedly conceal him shall be cut in pieces§.”

579. And when Tomombeiro saw that evil was determined against him, he disguised himself, and hid himself in a waterpool in the meadow. And the inhabitants of that country found him in the water up to his throat ; and they led him forth bound unto Mustapha, and sent him unto Egypt, and brought him unto Selim. And he spake not at all with him ; but his officers chastised him because of the treasure of Kamphison||, the sultan who reigned before him ; but Tomombeiro revealed nothing unto them ; and they have not learned where they are until this day. And they arose in the morning, and led him forth through the streets of the city, and hanged him upon a tree, in the gate of Basoilah¶, and they placed an iron chain round his throat. And Selim commanded, and they slew

* סינוסה.

§ Dan. iii. 29.

באסואילה.

† קאריביו.

הדרמי יתעד.

גאיילו.

|| אמפישון.

the rest of the captive mamluks with the edge of the sword, and there was not left of them one male*.

580. And it came to pass when the Pope Julius began to build the great high place† which is in Rome, that he sent the Franciscan friars into all the districts of the uncircumcised. And he gave them power to loose, and to bind, and to deliver souls from perdition. And they departed, and cried with a loud voice, saying, “Take off the ear-rings of your wives and daughters‡, and bring them for the building of the high place, and it shall come to pass when ye shall come, that ye shall save the souls of your generation from perdition.” And it came to pass, after the death of Julius, that the Pope Leo sent again, and they went, as before, unto the cities of Ashkenaz ; and they were lifted up. And it came to pass, whenever the Germans would speak, saying, “How could ye say this thing, and how can the pope do it ?” they answered them proudly, saying, “Ye shall be cursed if ye do not believe ; for there is no faith in you, and ye shall be an abhorrence to all flesh§.” And there was one Martin *Luther*||, a monk, a skilful and wise man ; and he also said unto them, “Why are ye not ashamed, when ye let your voice be heard on

* משתן בקר.

+ St. Peter's.

‡ These are the words of Aaron when about to make the golden calf. Exod. xxxii. 2.

§ Jer. lxvi.

|| הכהן מארטינו.

high, speaking such dreams?" And the priests could not give an answer; and they behaved with madness after their manner; and they anathematized him in the year one thousand five hundred and eighteen. And the wrath of Martin was much kindled; and Martin opened his mouth, and preached with a loud voice against the pope, and against the dreams and the abominations* of the popes; but still he delighted in THAT MAN†: and many gathered themselves unto him. And he made them statutes and ordinances, and spake revolt‡ against the wise men of the church; and he would explain from his own heart their law and the words of Paul; and they went not after the precepts of the popes; and their laws are two different laws until this day.

581. And the people of Alexandria arose from every side, and took the city, and the fortress, and slew the rest of the mamluks, and the nobles of the sultan, and his judges, and his officers with the edge of the sword: and they called Selim with a loud voice, and the earth was rent at their voice. And Selim sent thither soldiers, and took also the rest of the cities; and there arose no spirit in any

* נימומי.

† i.e. Jesus. According to Rabbi Joseph, it was only to be regretted that Luther believed in Christ.

‡ דבר סרה. Deut. xiii. 5.

man before him ; for the terror of him fell upon them. And he said unto them “ Let there be an oath between us :” and they sware unto him to be servants unto him, as at this day. And also the kings of the Arabs, that were under the government of the sultan, came unto Selim, and said, “ Behold we will be thy servants.” And there was not one man left in that land unto the land of Judah, who did not obey Selim ; and his government was greatly exalted. The dwellers in tents alone did not obey him, as they were fugitives and vagabonds as at this day.

582. And Selim went by the way of the river unto Alexandria ; and there were his ships at that time. And he viewed the city, and the fortresses, and put a garrison in the midst thereof, and returned unto Egypt. And he took five hundred of the principal men of the city, and their wives, and their children, and all their property, and the wives of the mamluks, and their children, and all that they had ; and they sent them in ships unto Constantinople ; and they abide there until this day. And he put a garrison into Egypt ; and he appointed Kari Bey for his viceroy ; and it grieved Junio* the pasha much.

583. And he thought in his heart, saying, “ To whom would Selim delight to do honor more than

to myself*, who have served him with all my strength, from my youth until this day?" And he brought counsel† from afar, lest Kari Bey should remain in Egypt; and it grieved Selim much.

584. And the captains of the hosts spake unto Selim "We cannot continue in Egypt with the money that our lord giveth, for the famine is sore." And Selim commanded Junio Pasha to tell the paymaster to increase their hire. But Junio Pasha told him nothing, for his soul was embittered. And Selim removed from Egypt: and it came to pass, when they were in the land of Judah, that the captains of the hosts murmured against Kari Bey the lieutenant, for he did not at all increase their hire. And he answered them saying, "Your murmurings are not against me, but against Selim; and now send unto him, and whatever he may say unto you, I will do:" and they sent unto him messengers, when he was near Jerusalem; and they told him saying, "There has not been given any thing more unto thy servants:" and it grieved Selim much. And [נְדָ] he sent, and they took Junio Pasha in their burning wrath, and brought him down by strangling to the grave. And Selim appointed judges in the land of Philistia, and

* Esther vi. 6.

† i.e. He consulted distant advisers, and had political transactions with foreign countries. Is. xxv. 1.

set Gazili over Damascus, and put a garrison in the midst thereof. And into the fortresses he put soldiers, and battering rams ; and he went unto Aleppo, and did in Aleppo according as he had done in Damascus ; and he went on his journey*. And he left Mustapha Pasha on the lower part of the mountain of Taurus†, in the land of Cilicia, to watch the land of Aram ; and with him were forty thousand horsemen, who made war with mighty valor. And he returned on the coast of the sea, and arrived at Boursa ; and he went to sea in ships, and returned unto his house at Constantinople ; and he blessed the people, and they returned every one unto his home.

585. In those days the ships of the Ishmaelites came to plunder. And it was told unto Andrea Doria, “ There are gone forth ships from Tunis to fight against thee.” And he went against them with six cruizers. And it came to pass, when he was off the isle Pianosa‡, that he lifted up his eyes and looked ; and behold, there came the Turks. And the Turks had nine cruizers, and they pursued after him ; and Andrea Doria fled unto the isle of Lilbas§ with subtlety. And when the Ishmaelites saw that he fled with subtlety, they became faint-hearted, and returned back ; and he pursued after them with two ships, and overtook them, and

* Gen. xiii. 3. † מאברו : פיאנושה § לילבה

arrayed a battle against them. And it came to pass, when they fought, that there came the rest of the vessels which he had, and joined battle with them* ; and the water was turned into blood. And Andrea Doria took six ships with a strong hand at that time. And of the six hundred Ishmaelites, only twenty-five were left ; and also of the uncircumcised there died multitudes on that day ; besides the wounded who were numberless. And the slaves that belonged unto them went out free on that day, which was the twenty-second day of April in the year one thousand five hundred and nineteen. Then began Andrea Doria to be a mighty hunter†, and his fame spread throughout all the earth.

586. And Selim travelled throughout all the cities of Yavan at that time, and subdued them, and they were his until this day. And it came to pass in the month Abib, that they brought out the ships, and the cruizers were two hundred ; and he commanded the men to go on board. And it came to pass one day, that there was another spirit within him‡, and he sent them, every one unto his house. And he went unto Adrianople, and abode there to hunt game. And it came to pass, when

* Gen. xiv. 8.

† נָבָר יְהִי means here, a victorious *condottiere*. Compare Gen. x. 9.

‡ i. e. He changed his mind.

the summer was past, that the Lord smote Selim with a cancer in his hinder parts, and it consumed one half of his flesh. And it came to pass, when his sickness became sore, that he put his head upon the knees of Piri* Pasha, and said unto him, “Behold, I am at the point to die; and what profit shall this government do to me†?” And he said unto him, “Let my lord the king command, that they may build a house for the poor with the property of the Ajemim‡, the servants of the Sofi, thine enemies, who have been in Boursinah these many days.” And Selim said unto him, “If I should be honored by the clothes of those men, will it be pleasing in the sight of the Lord?” And Selim commanded, and they gave them back all their property; and the three thousand ducats also, which were taken from Covro Florentino§, he restored at the same time. And he called his son Solyman, and he commanded him, saying, “Behold, I shall die; strengthen thyself and be a man||, and thou shalt fight against the king of Hungary and against the priests that are at Rhodes; and thou shalt destroy them according as it was in my heart. And thou shalt not make a covenant with them, for they vex us¶; and neither thou nor thy house, nor thy

* פִּרְיִ.

† Gen. xxv. 32.

‡ אֲנָיִם. See p. 411, note.

§ קֹבֵרְוּ פַּלּוֹרִינְטִינוּ.

|| 1 Kings ii. 2.

¶ Numb. xxv. 18.

kingdom will stand, if thou do not this thing.” And Selim died at Ziorlo*, which is the place where he fought against his father, at the end of September, in the year one thousand five hundred and twenty; and they buried him in the sepulchre of his fathers; and his son Solyman reigned in his stead.

587. In that year died Maximilian, the emperor, in the month of October; and the princes of Ashkenaz chose Charles, the son of Philip, the son of the king of Spard, and they made him king over themselves at Aquisgranum†. Then Francis, king of Tzaphrath, sought also to reign as emperor; and he sent Armiralio‡ to speak kindly unto them: but they listened not unto his voice; and he returned unto Tzaphrath.

588. These were the years of the life of Joshua the priest, my father: he lived sixty-eight years, and he gave up the ghost and died§, and was gathered unto his people on the fourth day of the month Tebeth, of the two hundred and eightieth year after the five thousand; and I buried him at Novi, over against the city: and his rest was glorious. And his wife had conceived, and she bare a son in that year, and I called his name Joshua. And the child grew up, and found favor in the eyes

* ציאורלו.

+ אקיסנראנה, Aix la Chapelle.

‡ אַרְמִירָאֵלִיו.

§ Gen. xxv. 8. 17.

of every one that saw him : and I was comforted after my father's death.

THE FIRST PART IS COMPLETE AND PERFECT.

תְּמַנְשָׁלֵם חַלְקָה דִּרְאָשָׁן.

The first and the second part of our Chronicles are related to each other in a similar, but not in the same manner as the Annals to the Histories of Tacitus. “ From the earliest times there have been two ways of transmitting the knowledge of events. By the one, it is done progressively, by recording events during the years in which they have occurred, unconnectedly, without either combination with the past or preparation for the future: by noting what engages attention for the present, neither paying much regard to its nature, nor considering how soon it may become unimportant. The other way is a comprehensive narrative, the subject of which is entire and complete: this does not need the limitation of time in the details, and such limitation may be rejected whenever it interferes with the main design. Narratives exclude every thing that is connected with their subject by no other link than unity of time; but they embrace every thing that is essentially germane to the matter; so they may therefore be embellished with episodes. ANNALS confine themselves to the bare mentioning of the names of persons, nations, and cities, because the things

they treat of are as familiar to countrymen and contemporaries as to the authors themselves: but NARRATIVES describe and explain, in order to present the distant, the past, and the unknown, clearly and vividly to the imagination of the hearer.

“ Annals or Chronicles, though they carefully limit every narration within the circle of a year, and throw together in motley disorder contemporaneous occurrences however heterogeneous, sometimes rise into animated history, and even expand and illustrate themselves in episodes. On the other hand, a history fully worthy of the name, like that of Thucydides or Polybius, may observe the annual periods very exactly, but, as necessarily as an epic poem, excludes whatever is in its nature foreign to the subject,—mere records, and all that is interesting to contemporaries alone.

“ There is an essential difference between public events which a man recollects, though only as in a dream, to have heard of at the time when they occurred, and those which preceded his birth. The former we think of with reference to ourselves; the latter are foreign to us. The epoch and duration of the former we measure by our own life: the latter belong to a period for which our imagination has no scale. Life and definiteness is imparted to all that we hear or read with respect to the events of our own boyhood.”—These remarks have been condensed with slight alteration from NIEBUHR on the Distinction between *Annals* and *History*, in the *Philological Museum*. May, 1833.

Tacitus and Grotius divided their historical works into annals and history, and commenced the latter from the time of their own birth. Rabbi Joseph begins the second part of his *Chronicles* not from the commencement of his own

CONCLUDING REMARKS.

existence, but from the period of his manhood or that of his earliest recollections. This deviation from a more appropriate mode of dividing, has probably arisen not merely from a desire of increasing the size of the first volume. However great may be the difference between historians such as Tacitus or Hugo Grotius, and the Jewish writer whose work is here translated, it still seems possible to apply these remarks of Niebuhr, in a certain degree, to the latter as well as to the former: and it was not without reason that Rabbi Joseph commenced the second part of his work from the period when the death of his father, by leaving him at the head of a family, must have effected an important change in his position in the world.

The first volume comprehends the years from Adam to about A. D. 1520, a period according to the common chronology of five thousand five hundred and twenty-four, or according to the Jewish era of five thousand two hundred and eighty years. The second volume describes the events which occurred during the thirty-three years from A. D. 1520 to A. D. 1553. In some of these scenes, Rabbi Joseph took an active part, and was therefore a more competent authority for them, than for the facts which are related in the first volume. The narrative of the second volume is more circumstantial, and consequently more interesting than that which we have now closed.

•

END OF THE FIRST VOLUME.

London:
John Wertheimer, Printer, Leman Street.

